

# Action Pack 12

المستوى الثالث

المنهاج الجديد

الوحدة الأولى Unit 1

Information Technology

تكنولوجيا المعلومات

Teacher: Sohaib Yaser 0788650494

Paragraph	ترجمة الفقرة
When <b>you</b> are using a computer, think about the technology <b>that (1)</b> is needed for it to work. People have been using types of computers for thousands of years. A metal machine was found on the seabed in Greece that was more than 2,000 years old. It is believed that <b>this</b> was the first ever computer.	عندما تستخدم الحاسوب, فكر في التكنولوجيا المطلوبة لتشغيله. استخدم الناس أنواعاً عدة من الحواسيب منذ مئات السنين. وجدت آلة معدنية في قاع البحر في اليونان منذ أكثر من 2000 سنة. اعتقد انها كانت أول حاسوب في العالم.
In the 1940s, technology had developed enough for inventors to make the first generation of modern computers. One such model was so large that <b>it (1)</b> needed a room that was 167 square metres to accommodate it. During that decade, scientists in England developed the first computer program. <b>It (2)</b> took 25 minutes to complete one calculation. In 1958 CE, the computer chip was developed.	في عام 1940 تطورت التكنولوجيا بما فيه الكفاية للمخترعين ليصنعوا أول جيل من الحواسيب الحديثة. أحد هذه النماذج كان ضخماً لدرجة أنه كان بحاجة لغرفة بمساحة 167 متر مربع ليحتويه. خلال تلك الفترة, طور العلماء في إنجلترا أول برنامج حاسوب. أخذ 25 دقيقة ليتم عملية حسابية واحدة. في عام 1958, تم تطوير الرقاقة الحاسوبية.
The first computer game was produced in 1962 CE, followed two years later by the computer mouse. In 1971 CE, the floppy disk was invented, which meant that information could be shared between computers. The first PC (personal computer) was produced in 1974 CE, so people could buy computers to use at home.	أنتجت أول لعبة حاسوب في 1962, تبعتها بعد ذلك بستينين فأرة الحاسوب. في 1971, تم اختراع القرص المرن. والذي قصد به مشاركة المعلومات بين الحواسيب. أنتج أول حاسوب شخصي في 1974, كي يشتري الناس الحواسيب ويستخدموها في منازلهم.
In 1983 CE, people could buy a laptop for the first time. Then, in 1990 CE, the British scientist Tim Berners-Lee developed the World Wide Web. It was not until 2007 CE that the first smartphones appeared. Today, most people use <b>their</b> mobile phones every day.	في 1983, استطاع الناس لأول مرة شراء الحاسوب النقال. بعد ذلك, في 1990 طور العالم البريطاني تيم بيرنرز لي الشبكة العالمية الواسعة. بعد ذلك بكثير ظهر الهاتف النقال عام 2007. اليوم, أغلب الناس يستخدم الهاتف الذكي بشكل يومي.
What will happen in the future? You can already buy watches <b>which</b> can do the same as mobile phones. Scientists have also developed glasses <b>that (2)</b> are capable of doing even more than this. Life in the future is going to see further changes in computer technology. It is likely that all aspects of everyday life will rely on a computer program, from how we travel to how our homes are heated	ما الذي سيحدث في المستقبل؟ بإمكانك الآن شراء ساعة والتي تقوم بما تقوم به الهواتف النقالة. أيضاً طور العلماء نظارات بإمكانها القيام بما هو أكثر من ذلك. سترى الحياة في المستقبل المزيد من التغييرات حول تكنولوجيا الحاسوب. و من المتوقع أن كل جانب من حياتنا اليومية ستعتمد على برامج الحاسوب. بدأ من كيفية تنقلنا إلى كيفية تدفئة بيوتنا.

Words must be saved

كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Use(v)	يستخدم	Enough	كافٍ	Game	لعبة	Web	شبكة
Think	يفكر	inventor	مخترع	Produce	ينتج	Appear	يظهر
About	عن	Make	يصنع	Follow	يتبع	Today	اليوم
need	يحتاج	Generation	جيل	Later	لاحقاً	Most	أغلب
Work(v)	يعمل	Modern	حديث	Mouse	فأرة	Happen	يحدث
People	الناس	Such	مثل	Invent	يخترع	Future	مستقبل
Type	نوع	Model	نموذج	Floppy disk	قرص مرن	Watch(n)	ساعة
thousand	مئة	Large	ضخم	Disk	قرص	Same	مثل
Year	عام	Room	غرفة	Mean	يعني	glass	نظارة / زجاج
Metal	معدن	Square	مربع	Information	معلومة	Capable	قادر
Machine	آلة	Accommodate	يتسع	Can	يستطيع	Life	حياة
find	يجد	During	خلال	Share	يشارك	further	أكثر
Seabed	قاع البحر	Decade	عقد (10 سنوات)	between	بين	Change(n)	تغير / فكة
Sea	بحر	scientist	عالم	Personal	شخصي	Aspect	جانب
Greece	دولة اليونان	England	إنجلترا	So	لذلك	rely	يعتمد
More	أكثر	Program	برنامج	Buy	يشترى	travel	يرحل
Old	قديم	Take	يأخذ	Home	منزل	Heat(v)	يسخن
Believe	يعتقد	Calculation	عملية حسابية	British	بريطاني		
First	أول	Chip	رقاقة	World	عالم		
Develop	يطور	Computer	حاسوب	Wide	واسع		

Words	Meanings (E)	Words
calculation	a way of <b>using numbers in order to find out an amount, price or value.</b>	عملية حسابية
computer chip	a <b>small piece</b> inside a computer which <b>stores</b> information via an electric current.	رقاقة حاسوب
floppy disk	a <b>flexible, removable magnetic disk</b> that stores computer information.	القرص المرن
PC	an abbreviation for personal computer, a computer that is used by one person at a time.	الحاسوب الشخصي
program	a set of instructions enabling a computer to function.	برنامج الحاسوب
Program / programme	content which is intended to be listened to on radio or watched on television.	برنامج على الإذاعة أو التلفاز
rely on	to have trust or confidence in something or someone.	يعتمد على / يثق بـ

## QUESTIONS

## أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية

1. What should you do when you are using a computer? - I should think about the technology that is needed for it to work.
2. **What** was the first ever computer? **Where** was it found? **When**? - A metal machine was found on the seabed in Greece that was more than 2000 years old.
3. **Where** was the first computer program developed by scientists? **When**? - in England in the 1940s.
4. How long did it take to complete one calculation in 1940s? - It took 25 minutes to complete one calculation.
5. Write down (Quote) the sentence which indicates the time of the development of the computer chip.  
- "In 1958 CE, the computer chip was developed."
6. When was the first computer mouse produced?  
- The first computer game was produced in 1962 CE, followed two years later by the computer mouse. (1964)
7. Quote the sentence that indicates the first emergence of a computer game and a mouse.  
- "The first computer game was produced in 1962 CE, followed two years later by the computer mouse."
8. Comment on the significance of the floppy disk when it was invented in 1971CE.  
- . It meant that information could be shared between computers.
9. What was the problem with the first generation of modern computers?  
- This model of computers was so large that it needed a room that was 167 square metres to accommodate it
10. Write down the sentence which indicates the year in which the first personal computer was produced and that people could purchase personal computers.  
- "The first PC (personal computer) was produced in 1974 CE, so people could buy computers to use at home."
11. When could people buy a laptop for the first time? - In 1983 CE, people could buy a laptop for the first time.
12. Who developed the World Wide Web? When?  
- The British scientist Tim Berners-Lee developed it in 1990 CE.
13. The first appearance of smartphones was in 2005 CE. TRUE FALSE - FALSE
14. Write down the sentence which indicates that most people utilize their mobile phones daily.  
- "Today, most people use their mobile phones every day."
15. The writer mentions two examples of new inventions related to computers. Write down these two inventions.  
- watches which can do the same as mobile phones. -glasses that are capable of doing even more than this.

16. What is the writer's prediction regarding computer technology?

- The writer states that life in the future is going to see further changes in computer technology. It is likely that all aspects of everyday life rely on a computer program, from how we travel to how our homes are heated.

17. The writer states that it is probable that life will depend on a computer program in the future. Write down two of these aspects.

travelling - the way of heating our homes

- the way of

18. List the inventions that were completed between 1958 CE and 1974 CE. (SB; P.7)

- the computer chip, the first computer game, the computer mouse, the floppy disk, the first personal computer (PC)

19. How do you think computer technology will develop further in the future? How far do you agree with the article? (Critical Thinking) (SB; P.7)

- I think that computer technology will develop further in the future to the point that it will 'know' how to address our every need. We will not have to think about everyday tasks like shopping and cleaning because technology will take care of them. I disagree with the article because I do not think that all aspects of our daily lives will rely on a computer program, because this would result in too many problems if the computers crashed. دليل المعلم

20. We rely more and more on computer technology. How far do you agree that this a positive development? (Critical Thinking) (SB; P.7)

- I agree that computers have enabled us to do many great things, but becoming overly reliant on technology is not a positive aspect of this development. دليل المعلم

21. Users of computers are always in danger due to online crimes. Explain this statement, suggesting three ways for being well-protected. (Critical Thinking)

- I think that people are always at risk because of techno-criminals who try to hack online computers, but there are many ways for being well-protected such as:

- being careful when a suspicious email or link is received; - installing anti-virus programs and an Internet security software; - using difficult passwords for different accounts on the Web.

22. Find a phrasal verb in the text which means "to have trust or confidence in something or someone." - rely on

23. What do the underlined words (pronouns) refer to?

- you: the reader -that (1): the technology - this: a metal machine -it (1): such model (of the first generation of modern computers). - It (2): the first computer program - their: most people -which: watches -that (2): glasses

24. What does the underlined compound noun computer chip mean?

- a small piece inside a computer which stores information via an electric current

25. What does the acronym (abbreviation) PC stand for? - personal computer

26. RESEARCH BOX (SB; p.7) When was the world's first email sent and why did it use the @ symbol?

- The first email was sent in 1971 CE by Ray Tomlinson, who used the @ symbol to separate the name of the person to who he sent the email and the name of their computer.

computer chip , calculation , floppy disk , smartphone ,  
program , PC , World Wide Web

- |                                                                                       |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. a mobile phone that connects to the Internet.                                      | (smartphone)     |
| 2. a very small piece found inside every computer.                                    | (Computer chip)  |
| 3. a small square piece of plastic that was used to store information from computers. | (floppy disk)    |
| 4. a computer designed for one person to use.                                         | (PC)             |
| 5. when you use maths to work out an answer.                                          | (calculation)    |
| 6. all the information shared by computers through the Internet.                      | (World Wide Web) |

**Q2: Choose the correct word.**

- |                                                                                 |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Modern computers can run a lot of <b>programs / models</b> at the same time. | <b>programs</b> |
| 2. You can move around the computer screen using a <b>tablet / mouse</b> .      | <b>mouse</b>    |
| 3. From 1990 CE to 2000 CE was a <b>decade / generation</b> .                   | <b>decade</b>   |
| 4. A <b>laptop / tablet</b> doesn't need a keyboard.                            | <b>Tablet</b>   |
| 5. The television was first <b>invented / developed</b> by John Logie Baird.    | <b>invented</b> |

**Q3: Complete the sentences. Use words from exercises 1 and 2.**

- |                                                                                     |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Although they are pocket-sized, -----s are powerful computers as well as phones. | <b>smartphone</b>  |
| 2. My brother is learning how to write computer -----s.                             | <b>program</b>     |
| 3. I need to make a few -----s before I decide how much to spend.                   | <b>calculation</b> |
| 4. Mobile phones used to be huge. Early -----s were as big as bricks!               | <b>model</b>       |
| 5. I can close the lid of my ----- and then put it in my bag.                       | <b>Laptop</b>      |

**Q7: Answer the following questions. WP P.7**

- |                                                                             |                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Which of these is an invention – the TV or gravity? Explain your answer.  | <b>TV, because human find it</b>                              |
| 2 What is the difference between a smartphone and an ordinary mobile phone? | <b>Smart phone is a mobile phone with advanced technology</b> |
| 3 What do you usually use to make a calculation?                            | <b>To find amount, price or value of something.</b>           |
| 4 Which would you rather have – a PC, a tablet or a laptop? Why?            | <b>Tablet, because it's smaller</b>                           |
| 5 Do you usually use a floppy disk? If not, what do you use?                | <b>I don't use floppy disk, instead I use flash memory</b>    |

## Using technology in Jordanian classrooms

Paragraph	ترجمة الفقرة
Young people love learning, but <b>they</b> (1) like learning even more if they are presented with information in an interesting and challenging way. Today, I am going to give a talk about how you can use technology in Jordanian classrooms.	الشباب اليافعون يحبون التعلم، ولكنهم يحبونها أكثر إذا ما تم تقديم المعلومات فيه بطريقة ممتعة تتسم بالتحدي، أما اليوم فسأقوم بالحديث عن كيفية استخدام التكنولوجيا في العُرف الصفية في الأردن.
<b>Here are some ideas:</b> Many classrooms now use a whiteboard as a computer screen. As a consequence, teachers can show websites on the board in front of the class. Teachers can then use the Internet to show educational programmes, play educational games, music, recordings of languages, and so on.	حالياً، العديد من العُرف الصفية يتم فيها استخدام اللوح الأبيض كشاشة حاسوب، ونتيجة لذلك، يمكن للمعلمين أن يقوموا بعرض مواقع إلكترونية على اللوح أمام جميع الطلاب في الصف، كما يمكن لهم أن يستخدموا الإنترنت لعرض برامج تعليمية، ولعب ألعاب تعليمية، وتشغيل الموسيقى، وتسجيلات اللغة، وغير ذلك.
In some countries, tablet computers are available for students to use in class. Therefore, students can use the tablets to do tasks such as showing photographs, researching information, recording interviews and creating diagrams. Tablets are ideal for pair and group work.	في بعض الدول، فإن الحواسيب اللوحية متاحة ليستخدمها الطلاب في الصف، ولذا يمكن للطلاب أن يستخدموها للقيام بالوظائف كعرض الصور الفوتوغرافية، والبحث عن المعلومات، وتسجيل المقابلات، ورسم الرسوم البيانية، كما أن الحواسيب اللوحية مناسبة للعمل بشكل ثنائي أو جماعي.
Teachers can perhaps ask <b>their</b> students to start writing a blog (an online diary), either about <i>their</i> own lives or as if <b>they</b> (2) were someone famous. <b>They</b> (3) can also create a website for the classroom. Students can contribute to the website, <b>so for example they</b> (4) can post work, photos and messages.	ولربما يطلب المعلمون من طلابهم أن يبدؤوا بكتابة مدوّنة (مفكرة عبر الإنترنت)، إما عن حياتهم أو باعتبارهم أنفسهم شخصاً معروفاً، كما بإمكانهم إنشاء موقع إلكتروني للصف، وبالتالي يستطيع الطلاب أن يساهموا في الموقع كنشر أعمال وصور ورسائل.
Most young people communicate through social media, by <b>which they</b> (5) send each other photos and messages via the Internet. Some students like to send messages <b>that</b> are under 140 letters for anyone to read. Teachers can ask students to summarise information about what they have learnt in class in the same way. If students learn to summarise quickly, they will be able to use this skill in future.	يتواصل معظم الشباب عن طريق مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي، والتي من خلالها يستطيعون أن يرسلوا صوراً ورسائل لبعضهم البعض بواسطة الإنترنت، فإن بعض الطلاب يفضلون إرسال رسائل أقل من 140 حرفاً ليتم قراءتها من قبل شخص آخر. كما أن باستطاعة المعلمين تكليف طلابهم بتلخيص المعلومات التي قد تعلموها في الصف بنفس الطريقة، وإذا ما قام الطلاب بالتلخيص بسرعة، فإنهم سيكونون قادرين على استخدام هذه المهارة في المستقبل.
We all like to send emails, <b>don't we?</b> <b>Email exchanges</b> are very useful in the classroom. Teachers can ask students to email what they have learnt to students of a similar age at another school. <b>They could even email students in another country.</b> <b>As a result</b> , students can then share information and help each other with tasks.	كلنا نحب إرسال الرسائل الإلكترونية، أليس كذلك؟ إن تبادل الرسائل الإلكترونية مفيد جداً في العُرفة الصفية، وبإمكان المعلمين تكليف طلابهم بإرسال رسائل إلكترونية تحتوي ما تعلمونها إلى أقرانهم في مدرسة أخرى، كما أن بإمكانهم إرسال ذلك لطلاب من دولة أخرى، ونتيجة لذلك، يمكن للطلاب أن يتبادلوا المعلومات ويساعدوا بعضهم البعض بأداء الوظائف.

<p>Another way of communicating with other schools is through talking to people over the computer. Most computers have cameras, so you can also see the people you are talking to. In this way, students who are studying English in Jordan can see what students in England are doing in the classroom while they are speaking to <u>them</u> (1).</p> <p>You can also use this system to invite guest speakers to give talks over a computer. For example, scientists or teachers from another country could give a lesson to the class. If you had this type of lesson, the students would be very excited.</p>	<p>طريقة أخرى للتواصل مع مدارس الأخرى هو خلال الحديث مع أناس آخرين عبر جهاز الحاسوب، فإن معظم الحواسيب تحوي كاميرات، ولذا فإنها تمكنك من رؤية من تتحدث إليهم، وبهذه الطريقة، يمكن للطلبة الذين يدرسون اللغة الإنجليزية في الأردن مشاهدة ما يفعلها الطلاب في الغرف الصفية في إنجلترا عند التحدث إليهم، كما ويمكنك أيضاً استخدام هذا النظام لدعوة المتحدثين الضيوف للحديث عبر جهاز الحاسوب، فعلى سبيل المثال، يمكن للعلماء والمعلمين من دولة أخرى تقديم درس للصف، وإذا كان عندك هذا النوع من الدروس، فإن الطلاب سيكونون مستمتعين.</p>
<p>Students often use computers at home if <b>they</b> have <b>them</b> (2). Students can use social media on their computers to help them with their studies, including asking other students to check and compare their work, asking questions and sharing ideas. The teacher must be part of the group, too, to monitor what is happening. <b>Thank you for listening. Does anyone have any questions?</b></p>	<p>غالباً ما يستعمل الطلاب أجهزة الحاسوب حال امتلاكها، كما يمكنهم استخدام مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من خلال حواسيبهم لمساعدتهم بدراساتهم بما يشمل كذلك الطلب من الطلاب التحقق من الحل ومقارنة العمل، وسؤال الأسئلة، ومشاركة الأفكار، ولا بد للمعلم أن يكون جزءاً من المجموعة أيضاً لمتابعة ما يحدث.</p> <p>شكراً لاستماعكم، هل عندكم من سؤال؟</p>

### Words must be saved

Words must be saved				كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً			
word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Young	شاب	play	يلعب	Life / lives	حياة	Another	آخر
Love	يحب	Music	موسيقى	famous	مشهور	Result	نتيجة
Learn	يتعلم	Recording	تسجيل	Someone	أحد ما	share	يشارك
Present	يقدم	Language	لغة	Contribute	يساهم	Help	يساعد
With	مع	Country	منطقة	Example	مثال	Talk(v)	يتكلم
Interesting	ممتع	Tablet PC	حاسوب لوحي	Post	ينشر	While	خلال
Challenging	تحدي	Available	متاح	work(n)	عمل	Speak	يتحدث
Way	طريق	Student	طالب	Photo	صورة	System	نظام
Going	يذهب (سوف)	Therefore	لذلك	Message	رسالة	invite	يدعو
Give	يعطي	Task	مهمة	Communicate	يتواصل	guest	ضيف
Talk(n)	حديث	Show(n)	عرض	Through	خلال	speaker	متحدث
Jordanian	أردني	Photograph	تصوير	Social	اجتماعي	Lesson	درس
Classroom	غرف صفية	Research	بحث	Media	إعلام	Excited	متحمس
Ideas	أفكار	Interview	مقابلة	By	بواسطة	Check	يتفقد
many	العديد	Create	يخلق / يصنع	Send	يرسل	compare	يقارن
Now	الآن	Diagram	رسم بياني	Via	خلال	part	جزء
Whiteboard	سبورة / لوح مدرسي	Perhaps	ربما	Like	يحب	Group	مجموعة
Screen	شاشة	Ask	يسأل	Under	تحت	monitor	يراقب
Consequence	عواقب / نتيجة	Start	يبدأ	Letter	رسالي		



Teacher	معلم	Write	يكتب	Anyone	أي شخص		
Website	موقع إلكتروني	Blog	مدونة	Read	يفقرأ		
Board	لوح	Online	مباشر	Summarise	يلخص		
Front	أمام	Diary	مذكرة	Useful	مفيد		
Show(v)	يظهر	Either	أي من	Similar	مشابه		
Educational	تعليمي	Own	يملك	Age	عمر		

Words	Meanings (E)	Words
access	to find information, especially on a computer	يصل للمعلومة
filter	a program that checks whether certain content on a web page should be displayed to the viewer	برنامج مفلتر
identity fraud	illegal actions using the identity of someone else, normally to buy things	انتحال الشخصية
privacy setting	controls available on social networking sites which let you decide who can see information	ضبط الخصوصية
security settings	controls available on computer programs which let you protect your computer from viruses	ضبط الحماية
ICT	Information and Communication Technology	المعلومات والاتصالات تكنولوجيا
satellite navigation system	a system of computers and satellites, used in cars and other places that tells you where something is, where you are or how to get to a place	نظام الملاحة عبر الأقمار الصناعية
user	a person who uses a product or service, especially a computer or another machine	مستخدم
web-building program	a software that helps you to create a website	برنامج إنشاء مواقع إلكترونية
web hosting	the business of housing, serving and maintaining files for one or more websites	استضافة المواقع

## QUESTIONS

## أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية

- Find a word in the text that means “a regularly updated personal website or web page, usually written in an informal style.” - blog
- Young people love learning but with two characteristics for the way of presenting information. Write down these two characteristics.  
- an interesting way - a challenging way
- Quote the sentence which indicates the topic of the talk.  
- Today, I am going to give a talk about how you can use technology in Jordanian classrooms.
- Teachers can use the Internet for many purposes. Write down two of these purposes.  
- to show educational programmes - to play educational games  
- to play music - to play recordings of languages (Any 2 of them)

5. Mention the tasks which can be done using tablet computers in classrooms.
  - Students can use the tablets to do tasks such as showing photographs, researching information, recording interviews and creating diagrams.
6. Tablets are suitable only for working individually in classrooms. **TRUE FALSE** - FALSE
7. Give a **brief** definition for a **blog**. - an online diary
8. Teachers can ask their students to write a blog in two forms. Write down these two forms.
  - to start writing a blog about their own lives ; - or as if they were someone famous
9. Students can contribute to the class website. Explain this statement.
  - The students can post work, photos and messages.
10. What is the benefit (value) of summarising quickly by students?
  - If students learn to summarise quickly, they will be able to use this skill in future.
11. Write down the sentence which indicates the number of letters of messages which students like to send.
  - “Some students like to send messages that are under 140 letters for anyone to read.”
12. What do most young people usually send to each other through the Internet (social media)? - photos – messages
13. Find out a **question tag** in the text above. - don't we? (We all like to send emails, don't we?)
14. How can students employ email exchanges in the process of learning?
  - Teachers can ask students to email what they have learnt to students of a similar age at another school. They could even email students in another country.
15. What is the benefit of using email exchanges in education?
  - Students can then share information and help each other with tasks.
16. You can communicate with other schools by many ways. Mention two of them.
  - email exchanges - talking to people over the computer using cameras.
17. Give an example from the text to show the significance of having computers with cameras in the scope of education. (As students from different cultures).
  - Students who are studying English in Jordan can see what students in England are doing in the classroom while they are speaking to them.
18. We can also use online computers to give talks over a computer. Clarify this.
  - Scientists or teachers from another country could give a lesson to the class.
19. What is the positive side of having online lessons?
  - If you had this type of lesson, the students would be very excited.

20. social media can be used by students to help them. Explain this statement.

- Students can use social media on their computers to help them with their studies, including asking other students to check and compare their work, asking questions and sharing ideas.

21. Why is it a must for the teacher to be part of the group? - to monitor what is happening.

22. What do the underlined pronouns refer to?

- they (1): Young people / I: the writer (presenter) / their: Teachers / they (2,3,4): students / which: social media / they (5): Most young people / that: messages / who: students / them (1): students in England / them (2): computers

23. In what ways can digital information be used to educate people? (SB; p. 8)

- Digital information can be used to educate people in a variety of ways. For example, you can listen to podcasts and lectures online, or use apps on a tablet to learn languages. You can also use the Internet to find information on what you are studying. (كتاب المعلم)

24. Do you think that computers will replace books one day? Why /Why not? (SB;p.8)

- Although computers are incredibly useful, I don't think that they will ever completely replace books because, for many people, reading is a very personal experience that doesn't feel the same when it is done on a computer. (كتاب المعلم)

25. Online addiction is a serious problem nowadays. Explain this statement, suggesting three ways for avoiding this phenomenon.

- No one can doubt that online addiction is a main concern nowadays, but we can avoid this problem by many ways such as:  
- managing and controlling your time when you're online;  
- reading paper-based newspapers, magazines and books;  
- doing exercises (sports) in space time instead of sitting before computers

### Q1. Which of the following would you use to ... VOCABULARY (SB; p.9) SPEAKING

**blog , email exchange, social media , tablet computer , whiteboard**

- |                                                        |                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. record interviews with people?                      | <b>tablet computer</b> |
| 2. share information with students in another country? | <b>email exchange</b>  |
| 3. watch educational programmes in class?              | <b>whiteboard</b>      |
| 4. ask another student to check your homework?         | <b>social media</b>    |
| 5. write an online diary?                              | <b>blog</b>            |

### Q2: Explain the difference in meaning between these phrases from the article. (SB; p.9)

**1. Share ideas:** to give your ideas to another person or to a group

**Compare ideas:** where two or more people consider how their ideas are similar or different

**2. Create a website:** to construct a website that currently does not exist

**Contribute to a website:** offer your writing and work to the website.

**3. Research information:** to use a variety of sources to find the information you need

**Present information:** to give the results of your research in a presentation

**4. Monitor what is happening:** you know what is happening and you are following the developments

**Find out what is happening:** you don't know what is happening and you want to discover it

**5. Give a talk to people:** you have prepared a speech and you are giving this speech to a group of people who are expecting it

**Talk to people:** an informal discussion

**6. Show photos:** you show people photos that you have in person

**Send photos:** you send photos to someone over the Internet or by post

**Q3: Complete the sentences so they are true for you. (SB; 9)**

1. My teacher says I must .....
2. In our English lessons, I can .....
3. I use technology to .....
4. Next year, I will .....
5. If I had more time, I would .....
6. If I use a computer, I .....
7. If the teacher gives us homework today, I .....

**Suggested Answers:**

1. My teachers says I must learn these words.
2. In our English lessons, I can use a dictionary.
3. I use technology to help me to do my homework.
4. Next year, I will start to learn Spanish.
5. If I had more time, I would learn another language.
6. If I use a computer, I learn a lot of useful information.
7. If the teacher gives us homework today, I will do it before I watch TV.

**Q2.: (WB; P4 E2)**

(Look around, settle down, take place, wake up, get started, meet up)

1. Tell me about the novel you're reading. Where does the story \_\_\_\_\_? take place
2. I'm sorry I'm late. I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ early enough. wake up
3. When I graduate from university, I would like to buy a house and \_\_\_\_\_ settle down
4. If you're free at the weekend, let's \_\_\_\_\_ and go shopping together. look around
5. I've never visited that museum. I'd like to go in and \_\_\_\_\_ look around
6. I've got a lot of homework, so I think I should \_\_\_\_\_ right now! get started

**Q3: Complete the verb phrases and phrasal verbs with the correct words. (SB; p.10)**

( in , on , out , about , with )

1. to **know** ----- dangers of the Internet about
2. to **connect** ----- people on the Internet with
3. to **turn** ----- privacy settings on
4. to **give** ----- personal information out
5. to **fill** ----- a form in

## The Internet of Things (AB; p.8)

<p><b>What is the ‘Internet of Things’?</b> Everyone knows that the Internet connects people, but now <b>it (1)</b> does more than that – it connects <b>objects</b>, too. These days, computers <b>often</b> communicate with each other; <b>for example</b>, your TV automatically downloads your favourite TV show, or your <b>‘sat nav’</b> system tells you where you are. This is known as the <b>‘Internet of Things’</b>, and there’s a lot more to come.</p>	<p>ما هو "انترنت الأشياء"؟ هذه ففي أيضاً، ذلك من بأكثر يقوم الآن ولكنه ببعض، بعضهم الناس يربط الإنترنت أن يعلم كلنا بتحميل التلفاز يقوم المثال، سبيل فعلى البعض، بعضها مع بالتواصل الحواسيب تقوم أجهزة الأيام، وهذا بمكانك، بإخبارك الصناعية الأقمار عبر الملاحاة نظام يقوم كما المفضل لديك، التلفازي العرض الكثير الكثير الأيام في جعبة زال ولا الأشياء، بإنترنت يعرف ما</p>
<p><b>An easy life!</b> In just a few years’ time, experts say that billions of machines will be connected to each other and to the Internet. <b>As a consequence</b>, computers will increasingly run our lives for us. <b>For example</b>, your fridge will know when you need more milk and add <b>it (2)</b> to your online shopping list; your windows <b>will close</b> if it is <b>likely</b> to rain; your watch will record your heart rate and email your doctor; and your sofa will tell you when you need to stand up and get some exercises!</p>	<p>حياة سهلة! وخلال عدة سنوات، يقول الخبراء بأن بلايين الآلات ستكون متصلة ببعضها البعض وبالإنترنت، ونتيجة لذلك، ستقوم الحواسيب بإدارة حياتنا بشكل متزايد، فعلى سبيل المثال، ستعرف الثلاجة موعد حاجتك للمزيد من الحليب، وتقوم بإضافة ذلك للثلاجة التسوق عبر الإنترنت، كما أن النوافذ تقوم بإغلاق نفسها ذاتياً عند احتمالية نزول المطر، ناهيك عن ساعة يدك والتي ستقوم بتسجيل معدل نبضات قلبك، وإرسال إيميل لطبيبك الخاص، كما ستقوم أريكتك (الكتابية تاعت حضرة جنبك (بإخبارك بموعد حاجتك للوقوف، والقيام ببعض التمارين.</p>
<p><b>A frightening future</b> Many people are excited about the ‘Internet of Things’. For <b>them</b>, a dream is coming true. They say that our lives will be easier and more comfortable. However, <b>others</b> are not so sure. They want to keep control of their own lives and their own things. In addition, <b>they wonder what would happen if criminals managed to access their passwords and security settings</b>. The dream could easily become a nightmare!</p>	<p>مستقبل مخيف كثير من الناس يشعرون بالمتعة بسبب إنترنت الأشياء، فبالنسبة لهم قد أصبح الحلم حقيقة، حيث يقولون بأن حياتهم ستكون أكثر سهولة وراحة، وعلى أية حال، فإن آخرين غير متأكدين جداً من هذا الأمر، ويريدون أن يسيطروا ويتحكموا بحياتهم ومقتنياتهم الخاصة، وإضافة إلى ذلك، فإنهم يتساءلون متعجبين عما يفعلونه في حال اختراق مجرمي التكنولوجيا ووصولهم لكلمات سرهم وضبط حماية أجهزة حواسيبهم، عندها يصبح الحلم كابوساً!</p>

### Words must be saved

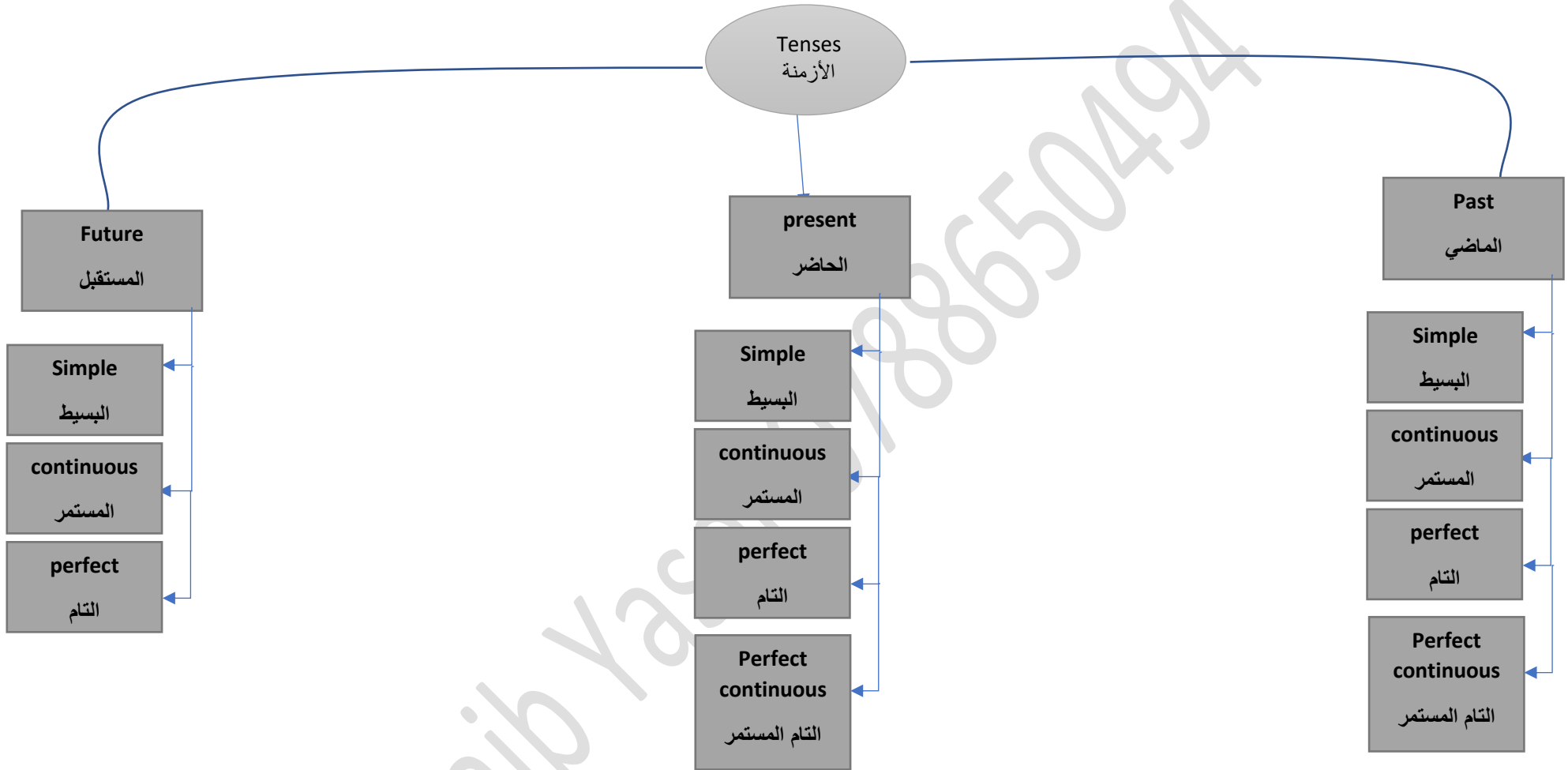
كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً			
word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Things	أشياء	expert	خبير
Everyone	كل شخص	Say	يقول
Connect	يتصل	Billion	مليارات
But	لكن	Increasingly	بشكل متزايد
Object	شيء (جمادات)	Run	يركض (يدير)
Automatically	بشكل تلقائي	Fridge	ثلاجة
Download	يحمل	Milk	حليب
		Rain	مطر
		Sure	متأكد
		heart	يبيقي
		Rate	يتحكم
		Sofa	إضافة
		Stand up	يتعجب
		Exercise	مجرمين
		Dream	يدير

Favourite	مفضل	Shopping	تسوق	Coming true	يصبح حقيقة	Access	يصل
Tell	يخبر	List	قائمة	Easy	سهل	Password	كلمة سر
A lot	العديد	Window	شباك	Comfortable	مريح	Security	أمن
Few	قليل	Close(v)	يغلق	However	على أي حال	Sitting	إعدادات
						nightmare	كابوس

**Q12:** What are the advantages and disadvantages of the 'Internet of Things'? Read the lists and add your own ideas. (WB; p.9)

Advantages	disadvantages
<p><b>health:</b> monitor health and activity; fridges advise on healthy eating; more time to relax;</p> <p><b>transport:</b> driverless cars automatically avoid crashes; traffic controlled more efficiently no more traffic jams;</p> <p><b>at home:</b> control washing machines, cookers, etc. with your phone; lights and heating go on and off automatically (saving energy);</p> <p><b>leisure:</b> smart TV automatically downloads your favourite shows; music systems play music to suit your mood;</p>	<p><b>privacy:</b> everything you do is tracked</p> <p><b>security:</b> criminals could get control of your personal information; criminals could take over the whole system</p> <p><b>safety:</b> computers sometimes fail consequences could be terrible;</p> <p><b>employment:</b> many thousands of jobs are lost;</p>

# Tenses الأزمنة



## الماضي البسيط Simple Past

Subject	Verb		
	Be	Have	Do
I	was	had	did
You	were	had	did
He/She/It	was	had	did
We	were	had	did
You	were	had	did
They	were	had	did



التالي بعض النقاط التي يجب عزيزي الطالب أن تراعيها لتتمكن من فهم القاعدة بسهولة:

1 – يجب حفظ تصاريف الأفعال لتتمكن من حل الجمل بسهولة.

2 – يجب حفظ قاعدة كل تصريف من التصاريف لتمييز بينها.

3 – حاول حفظ قاعدة واحدة في اليوم وقم بحل أكبر عدد ممكن من الجمل عليها لكي تستطيع تغطية القاعدة بشكل كامل ووافٍ.

**الماضي البسيط** : هو كل فعل تم في الماضي وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي.

( الماضي البسيط مع be/have/do )

Form القاعدة	الإثبات Affirmative	Sub + V2 + Obj	Ali played football
	النفى Negative	Sub + didn't + base verb v1 + Obj	Ali didn't play football
	السؤال Question	Did + Sub + Base verb v1 + Obj	Did Ali play football?
	كلمات دلالية Key words	yesterday, last month, ago, in 1970, once upon time, in older times, in those days , in ancient years , in my childhood	

تقسم تصاريف الأفعال إلى قسمين : 1 – منتظم ( regular ) وهو الفعل الذي ينتهي ب ed مثل: talk = talked play = played

2 – غير منتظم ( Irregular ) وهو الفعل الذي تتغير حروفه مثل: drink = drank drunk swim = swam swum

الجدول التالية توضح متى يتم لفظ ed عندما تكون في نهاية الجملة

Pronunciation of -ed ending لفظ ال ed عندما تكون في نهاية الجملة		
/t/	/id/	/d/
<b>p/k/f/s/sh/ch</b>	<b>t/d</b>	<b>All other sounds</b>
P= stopped K = looked F= laughed S= danced Sh= washed Ch= watched	T= waited Started D= ended needed	Played Showed Opened Lived agreed



SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE		SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
<b>Group 1</b>				<b>Group 5</b>		
<b>Ring</b>	rang	rung		bend	bent	bent
<b>Sing</b>	sang	sung		send	sent	sent
<b>sink</b>	sank	sunk		lend	lent	lent
<b>drink</b>	drank	drunk		spend	spent	spent
<b>shrink</b>	shrank	shrunk		build	built	built
<b>swim</b>	swam	swum		sleep	slept	slept
<b>begin</b>	began	begun		keep	kept	kept
<b>run</b>	ran	run		creep	crept	crept
<b>Group 2</b>				weep	wept	wept
<b>feed</b>	fed	fed		sweep	swept	swept
<b>lead</b>	led	led		leap	leapt (leaped)	leapt (leaped)
<b>breed</b>	bred	bred		feel	felt	felt
<b>read</b>	read* (red)	read		mean	meant	meant
<b>sell</b>	sold	sold		dream	dreamt /(dreamed)	dreamt /(dreamed)
<b>tell</b>	told	told		meet	met	met
<b>slide</b>	slid	slid		leave	left	left
<b>hold</b>	held	held		lose	lost	lost
<b>Group 3</b>				burn	burnt /(burned)	burnt /(burned)
<b>hit</b>	hit	hit		<b>Group 6</b>		
<b>fit</b>	fit	fit		hang	hung	hung
<b>spit</b>	spit (spat)	spit (spat)		hang (to kill)	hanged	hanged
<b>knit</b>	knit /(knitted)	knit /(knitted)		dig	dug	dug
<b>quit</b>	quit	quit		shoot	shot	shot
<b>let</b>	let	let		stand	stood	stood
<b>set</b>	set	set		understand	understood	understood
<b>upset</b>	upset	upset		stick	stuck	stuck
<b>shut</b>	shut	shut		strike	struck	struck
<b>cut</b>	cut	cut		sit	sat	sat
<b>put</b>	put	put		win	won	won
<b>cost</b>	cost	cost		make	made	made
<b>hurt</b>	hurt	hurt		pay	paid	paid
<b>spread</b>	spread	spread		lay	laid	laid
<b>broadcast</b>	broadcast	broadcast		say	said	said

Group 4			light	lit / (lighted)	lit / (lighted)
<b>buy</b>	bought	bought	find	found	found
<b>fight</b>	fought	fought	found	founded	founded
<b>seek</b>	sought	sought	<b>Group 7</b>		
<b>think</b>	thought	thought	throw	threw	thrown
<b>bring</b>	brought	brought	grow	grew	grown
<b>teach</b>	taught	taught	blow	blew	blown
<b>catch</b>	caught	caught	draw	drew	drawn
<b>SIMPLE FORM</b>	<b>SIMPLE PAST</b>	<b>PAST PARTICIPLE</b>	<b>SIMPLE FORM</b>	<b>SIMPLE PAST</b>	<b>PAST PARTICIPLE</b>
Group 8			withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
<b>write</b>	wrote	written	fly	flew	flown
<b>choose</b>	chose	chosen	know	knew	known
<b>freeze</b>	froze	frozen	<b>Group 9</b>		
<b>speak</b>	spoke	spoken	dive	dived/dove	dived
<b>awake</b>	awoke	awoken	do	did	done
<b>break</b>	broke	broken	go	went	gone
<b>steal</b>	stole	stolen	hear	heard	heard
<b>ride</b>	rode	ridden	have	had	had
<b>rise</b>	rose	risen	(be) am , is , are	was, were	been
<b>shake</b>	shook	shaken	come	came	come
<b>take</b>	took	taken	become	became	become
<b>overtake</b>	overtook	overtaken	overcome	overcame	overcome
<b>mistake</b>	mistook	mistaken	see	saw	seen
<b>fall</b>	fell	fallen	saw	sawed	sawn /(sawed)
<b>forget</b>	forgot	forgotten	lie	lied	lied
<b>hide</b>	hid	hidden	lie	lay	lain
<b>shave</b>	shaved	shaven/shaved	lay	laid	laid
<b>bite</b>	bit	bitten			
<b>beat</b>	beat	beaten			
<b>swear</b>	swore	sworn			
<b>tear</b>	tore	torn			
<b>wear</b>	wore	worn			
<b>weave</b>	wove	woven			
<b>forbid</b>	forbade	forbidden			
<b>give</b>	gave	given			
<b>forgive</b>	forgave	forgiven			

<b>drive</b>	drove	driven			
<b>eat</b>	ate	eaten			
<b>get</b>	got	got/gotten			
<b>prove</b>	proved	proven/proved			
<b>show</b>	showed	shown			
<b>wake</b>	woke/waked	woken/waked			

الجدول التالي تصارييف الأفعال حسب اللفظ وهي مقسمة لعدة جداول لتسهيل عملية الحفظ عليك عزيزي الطالب.



Examples:

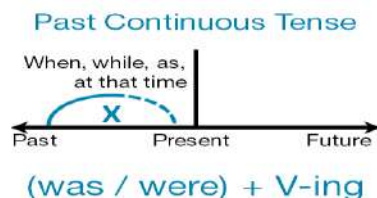
أمثلة على الماضي البسيط (بإمكانك عزيزي الطالب إضافة المزيد من الجمل)

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
<b>I walked</b>	I didn't walk	Did I walk?
<b>You walked</b>	You didn't walk	Did you walk?
<b>He walked</b>	He didn't walk	Did he walk?
<b>We walked</b>	We didn't walk	Did we walk?
<b>They walked</b>	They didn't walk	Did they walk?
<b>I saw a movie yesterday.</b>	<b>I didn't see</b> a play yesterday.	<b>Did you have</b> dinner last night?
<b>Last year, I traveled to Japan.</b>	Last year, I <b>didn't travel</b> to Korea.	<b>Were</b> they in Iceland last January?
<b>She washed her car.</b>	He <b>didn't wash</b> his car.	<b>Did you have</b> a bicycle when you were young?
	They <b>weren't</b> in Rio last summer.	<b>Did you do</b> much climbing in Switzerland?
	We <b>didn't have</b> any money.	
	We <b>didn't have</b> time to visit the Eiffel Tower.	
	We <b>didn't do</b> our exercises this morning.	



## الماضي المستمر Past continuous

الماضي المستمر هو حدث حصل في الماضي واستمر في الماضي لوقت معين وتم إيقافه من خلال حدث آخر وهو الماضي البسيط.



أرفق لك عزيزي الطالب جدول يلخص قاعدة الماضي المستمر (الإثبات, النفي, السؤال)

Form القاعدة	الإثبات Affirmative	Sub + was / were + V(ing)	When he slept , I was swimming.
	النفي Negative	Sub + was / were + not + V(ing)	When he didn't sleep , I was not swimming
	السؤال Question	Was / were + Sub + V(ing)?	Was he swimming when he slept?
	كلمات دلالية Key words	When While as	She was eating when I came. I came while she was eating. I came as she was eating.

لنفهم الآن وظيفة كل من when / while في الجمل ومتى يأتي ماضي بسيط ومتى يأتي ماضي مستمر, تابع الجدول الآتي

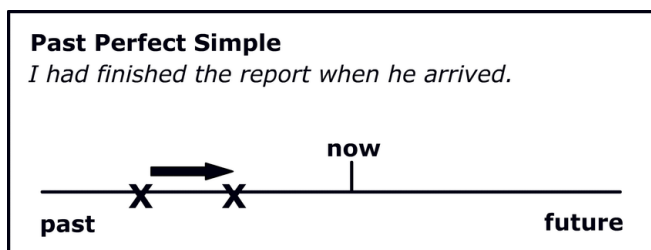
When يأتي بعدها حدث قصير أو ماضي بسيط  
While يأتي بعدها حدث طويل أو ماضي مستمر

	I was watching TV	When	Ahmad knocked the door.
when	Ahmad knocked the door	,	I was watching TV
	Ahmad knocked the door	While	I was watching TV
While	I was watching TV	,	Ahmad knocked the door

- **While** Ali was driving home, he saw a great accident.
- **While** you are using a needle, you should be careful.
- **When** the bell rang, the old man was having a nap in the living room.
- **When** it rains heavily, all the streets and pavements around get muddy.

## الماضي التام Past perfect

الماضي التام: حدث حصل في الماضي في وقت محدد في الماضي وانتهى في الماضي



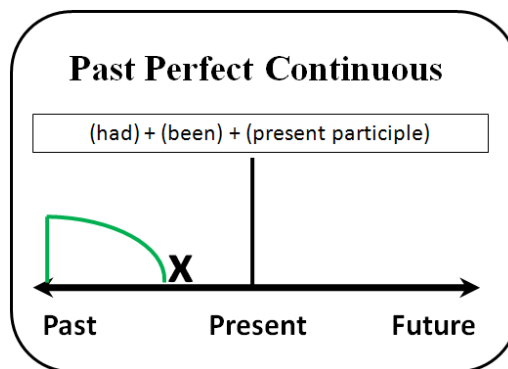
أرفق لك عزيزي الطالب جدول يلخص قاعدة الماضي التام (الإثبات, النفي, السؤال)

Form القاعدة	الإثبات Affirmative	S + had + past participle (V3)	He had finished the test.
	النفي Negative	S + had + not + past participle (V3)	She hadn't gone out.
	السؤال Question	Had + Sub + past participle (V3)?	Had Ahmad finished the test?
	كلمات دلالية Key words	After/ as soon as/ because had V3 By (time) had v3 had v3 By the time/ before S.P ..	I went to the mall after I had slept. By 2007, smartphones had appeared. Ali had gone before you arrived

- I had written articles on various topics **before** he came.
- The plane had left **by the time** I got to the airport.
- She stayed up all night **because** she had received bad news

## الماضى التام المستمر Past perfect continuous

الماضى التام المستمر: هو حدث حصل فى الماضى واستمر لفترة واستمر لفترة من الزمن قبل بدأ حدث آخر



أرفق لك عزيزي الطالب جدول يلخص قاعدة الماضى التام (الإثبات, النفي, السؤال)

<b>Form</b> القاعدة	<b>Affirmative</b> الإثبات	<b>S + had + been + V(ing)</b>	I had been waiting.
	<b>Negative</b> النفي	<b>S + had + not + been + v(ing)</b>	He hadn't been waiting.
	<b>Question</b> السؤال	<b>Had + Sub + been + V(ing) ?</b>	Had she been waiting?
	<b>Key words</b> كلمات دلالية	<b>For</b> <b>Since</b>	They had been eating for 2 hours. We had been waiting the match since April.

الآن عزيزي الطالب يجب أن نميز بين Since و for لنعرف كيف نقوم باستخدامها:

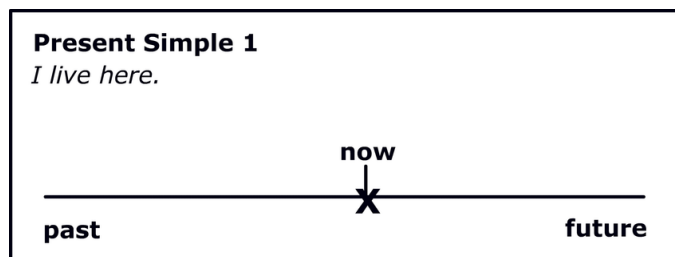
since	for
We use since with a point in time in the past. نستخدم since لنشير لوقت محدد في الماضي	We use for with a period of time in the past, نستخدم for لنشير لفترة من الوقت في الماضي, لا يهم الوقت تحديداً
Since 2020 / since 2 A.M / since May / since Monday	For ages / for a long time / for the weekend / for three days

الكلمات الدلالية ومتى يتم استخدام قاعدة الماضى التام و التام المستمر

الفعل أول الجملة	وجود ظرف دال على الإستمرار	الفعل الثاني
Simple past	For / since / every / all / less / a day / few / by / by the time	Had been + V(ing)
Simple past	Already / twice / number / never / yet / just / several / ever / first / nobody	Had + V(ing)
Simple past	See / love / know / be / own / hear / realize / recognise / belong / seem أفعال غير مستمرة	Had + V(ing)
Simple past	عدم وجود ظروف دالة على الإستمرار	Had + V(ing)

## المضارع البسيط Simple present

المضارع البسيط: هو الزمن الذي نتحدث فيه عن عادة متكررة، أحداث متكررة، حقيقة علمية، عواطف وأمنيات.



Form القاعدة	Affirmative الإثبات	Sub + V1 + obj	Ali reads books daily.
	Negative النفي	Sub + (don't / doesn't) + v1 + obj	Ali doesn't read books daily.
	Question السؤال	(Do / does) + sub + v1	Does Ali read books?
	Key words كلمات دلالية	Always / often / usually / sometimes / seldom / never Every / on / at / in / after Monthly / weekly / yearly / daily	

للتمييز بين استخدام s / es و الفعل infinitive أي مجرد

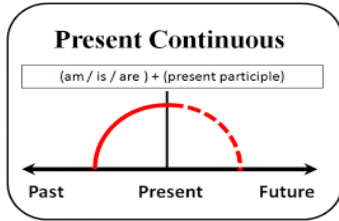
	Singular	Plural
First Person	I write	We write
Second Person	You write	You write
Third Person	He/she/it writes	They write
	Singular	Plural
First Person	I do not write	We do not write
Second Person	You do not write	You do not write
Third Person	He/she/it does not write	They do not write

للتمييز بين استخدام s / es في الفعل

الأفعال التي تنتهي ب الأحرف في الجدول ثم يتبعها S / es / ies							
<u>s</u>	<u>z</u>	<u>sh</u>	<u>ch</u>	<u>x</u>	<u>o</u>	<u>Consonant + y</u>	<u>others</u>
Add- es	Add- es	Add- es	Add- es	Add- es	Add- es	Change y to I Add- es	Add - S
he passes	He realizes	She washes	he watches	He fixes	He goes	She studies	It plays



For habits العادات	For repeated actions or events الأحداث المتكررة	For general truths الحقائق	For instructions or directions التعليمات والإرشادات	For fixed arrangements جدالات ثابتة	With future constructions للمستقبل
He drinks tea at breakfast. She only eats fish. They watch television regularly.	We catch the bus every morning  It rains every afternoon in the hot season. They drive to Monaco every summer.	Water freezes at zero degrees. The Earth revolves around the Sun. Her mother is Peruvian	Open the packet and pour the contents into hot water.  You take the No.6 bus to Watney and then the No.10 to Bedford.	His mother arrives tomorrow.  Our holiday starts on the 26th March	She'll see you before she leaves.  We'll give it to her when she arrives.



### المضارع المستمر Present continuous

المضارع المستمر: يشير إلى فعل يحدث الآن أو يتكرر ومن الممكن أن يستمر في المستقبل.

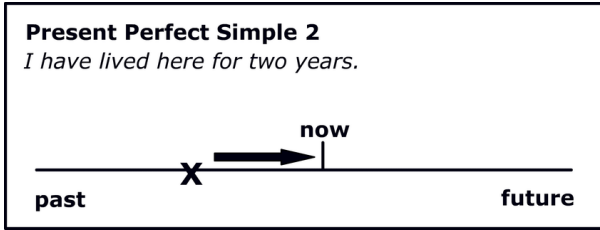
Form القاعدة	Affirmative الإثبات	Sub + (am / Is / are) + V(ing)	
	Negative النفي	Sub + (am / is / are) + not + V(ing)	He isn't reading a book now. I am not reading a book now. They aren't reading a book now.
	Question السؤال	(Am /Is/Are) + Sub + V(ing)?	Is he reading a book now? Am I reading a book now? Are They reading a book now?
	Key words دلالية	Now / at this moment / at present Listen / look / watch out Today / these days Be quite / be careful	

استخدامات المضارع المستمر

At the time of speaking	Something temporary	Actions happen repeatedly	About the future / planned
I'm swimming now	He's living in London for 2 weeks	He is always sitting here.	She's meeting her parents.

## المضارع التام Present perfect

المضارع التام: حدث قد انتهى أو اكتمل وله آثار لازالت ظاهرة.

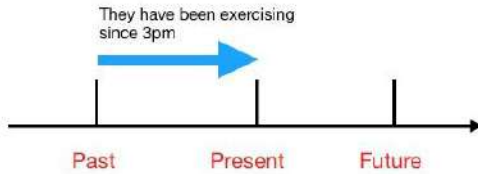


Form القاعدة	الإثبات Affirmative	Sub + (have / has) + v3	I have already done this job
	النفي Negative	Sub + (have / has) +not + v3	He has already done this job
	السؤال Question	(Have / has) + Sub + v3	Have we done this job?
	كلمات دلالية Key words	Just / for / already / ever / yet / Never / since / today // so far / recently / lately / hardly	

لا تنسى مراجعة جدول since / for في قاعدة الماضي التام المستمر

## المضارع التام المستمر Present perfect continuous

المضارع التام المستمر: حدث حصل في الماضي واستمر بالحدوث في الوقت الحاضر.



Form القاعدة	الإثبات Affirmative	Sub + (have / has) + been + v1	I have been reading this book since Friday.
	النفي Negative	Sub + (have / has) +not + been + v1	She hasn't been reading for three weeks
	السؤال Question	(Have / has) + Sub + been + v1	Have we been reading this book?
	كلمات دلالية Key words	For / since All How long	

استخدامات المضارع التام المستمر:

Unfinished activity	Repeated actions	Consequences	Actions still happening
They have been eating for 10 minutes	She has been playing tennis all week	I have been drawing. That's why I am dirty.	We have been studying for 4 years.

\*تنويه : الأفعال التالية لا تأتي مستمرة : see / hear / want / hate / love / have / understand / think / finish / realise / remember / need / know

## المستقبل البسيط Simple future

المستقبل البسيط : هو حدث حصل في المستقبل أما بالتخطيط أو التوقع



<b>Form</b> القاعدة	<b>Affirmative</b> الإثبات	<b>Sub + will + v1</b>	I will visit you.
	<b>Negative</b> النفي	<b>Sub+ will + not +v1</b>	I won't visit you.
	<b>Question</b> السؤال	<b>Will + Sub + v1 ?</b>	Will you be my friend?
	<b>Key words</b> كلمات دلالية	<b>Next week, month, year, hour</b> <b>Today / tonight / in the future</b> <b>tomorrow</b> <b>Perhaps / maybe / probably</b> <b>I think / I hope / I wish</b>	

الجدول التالي يوضح الفرق بين استخدامات will / going to

will	Going to
Immediate decision قرار مفاجئ دون تخطيط	Prior plans مخططات مسبقة أو تم التخطيط
I'll have salad now	I'm going to visit my grandparents next Monday.
Personal opinion or experience تجربة أو رأي شخصي	Present evidence دليل ملموس
I think they will lose the match	Look at those clouds, it's going to rain.
Future fact حقائق مستقبلية	Something is about to happen شيء سيحدث
The sun will rise tomorrow.	Watch out! The train is going to pass.

\*تنويه : كلاً من will / going to قد يتم استخدامهما للإشارة لتوقعات مستقبلية دون وجود اختلاف حقيقي بينهما في المعنى

I think it will be cloudy tomorrow / I think it is going to be cloudy tomorrow

## الكلام المنقول Reported Speech

الكلام المنقول : هو نقل الكلام من شخص لآخر مع تغييرات قواعدية تحصل على الجملة ( النميمة )

مثال لتوضيح في حالة المضارع: (الكلام المباشر direct speech) I like dogs : (الكلام المنقول reported speech) She says she likes dogs.

تغيير الأزمنة Tense Changes

الكلام المباشر Direct speech	الكلام المنقول Reported speech
<b>Present Simple</b> She always wears a coat.	<b>Past simple</b> He said (that) she always wore a coat.
<b>Present continuous</b> I'm looking for my keys.	<b>Past continuous</b> She said (that) she was looking for her keys.
<b>Present perfect</b> She has written three letters for her friend.	<b>Past perfect</b> He said (that) she had written three letters for her friend
<b>Present perfect continuous</b> We have been traveling a lot.	<b>Past perfect continuous</b> They said (that) they had been traveling a lot.
<b>Simple Past</b> My friend gave me a pen.	<b>Past perfect</b> He said (that) his friend had given him a pen.
<b>Past continuous</b> I was raining	<b>Past perfect continuous</b> he said (that) it had been raining.
<b>Past perfect</b> I had gone to Amman	<b>Past perfect</b> He said (that) he had gone to Amman
<b>Past perfect continuous</b> We had been trying to open the door for five minutes	<b>Past perfect continuous</b> They said (that) they had been trying to open the door for five minutes
<b>Will</b> I will finish my report	<b>Would</b> He said ( that ) he would finish his report.
<b>Can</b> I can speak English	<b>Could</b> He said (that) he could speak English.
<b>May</b> I may invite them to dinner	<b>Might</b> She said (that) she might invite them to dinner.
<b>Must</b> I must go to the bank	<b>Had to</b> She said (that) she had to go to the bank.
<b>Have to / has to</b> I have to eat my lunch	<b>Had to</b> She said (that) she had to eat her lunch
<b>Am/is are</b> I am eating	<b>Was were</b> He said (that) He was eating

تلخيص للجدول الأعلى, بإمكانك عزيزي الطالب كتابة بعض الأمثلة بجانب كل نقطة.

- Present Simple **Tense** into Past Simple **Tense**
- Present Continuous **Tense** into Past Continuous **Tense**
- Present Perfect **Tense** into Past Perfect **Tense**
- Past Simple **Tense** into Past Perfect **Tense**
- Past Continuous **Tense** into Past Perfect Continuous **Tense**
- Past Perfect **Tense** (the tense remains unchanged)
  
- **Will** into **Would**
- **Will be** into **Would be**
- **Will have** into **Would have**
- **Will have been** into **Would have been**
  
- **Can** into **Could**
- **Could** (The verb remains unchanged)
- **Have to** into **Had to**
- **Must** into **Must/Had to**
- **May** into **Might**
- **Might** (The verb remains unchanged)
- **Should** (The verb remains unchanged)

Time and place references often have to change in **Indirect Speech** تغييرات الوقت و المكان

Direct speechالكلام المباشر	Reported speechالكلام المنقول
Now	Then / at that time
At that moment	At that moment
Today	That day
Here	There
This	That
These	Those
Tomorrow	The following day/ The next day/ The day after
Next week	The following week/ The next week/ The week after
Yesterday	The previous day/ The day before
Last week / since	The previous week/ The week before
Ago	Previously/ Before
Tonight	That night

تغيير الضمائر Pronouns changes

الكلام المباشر Direct speech	الكلام المنقول Reported speech	الكلام المباشر Direct speech	الكلام المنقول Reported speech
I	He/She	us	Them
He	He	my	His / her
She	She	Myself	Himself / herself
It	It	Your	My / his / her / their / our
we	they	Mine	his / her
You	I / she / he / they / we	Yours	His / hers / theirs
They	they	Ours	Theirs
me	Him / her	Our	their

أمثلة على بعض الأفعال الكلام المنقول

INTRODUCTORY VERBS INREPORTED SPEECH			
VERB		Reported speech	
الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها فعل مجرد	Verb + to + Infinitive	Agree	He agreed to cook for me.
		Offer	He offered to carry her baby.
		Refuse	She refused to buy me a car.
		Demand	He demanded to be told the truth.
		Threaten	He threatened to punish me if I didn't behave myself.
		Promise	He promised to marry her when he returned.
		Claim	He claimed to have heard her say that.
الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها مفعول به ثم فعل مجرد	Verb + Indirect object + to + infinitive	Advise	He advised me to take a coat.
		Allow	He allowed me to park over there.
		Beg	She begged me to call the police.
		Command	He commanded them to drop their weapons.
		Encourage	He encouraged me to phone her.
		Forbid	My doctor forbade me to eat sweets.
		Invite	She invited me to go to his house.
		Want	He wanted me to drink a cup of tea.
		Instruct	He instructed me to insert coin.
		Permit	My parents permitted me to travel with my friends
		Urge	He urged me to finish reading the book.
		Order	She ordered me to get out of bed.
Remind	She reminded me to take out the garbage.		
Warn	She warned me not to go near the oven.		

INTRODUCTORY VERBS INREPORTED SPEECH			
VERB		Reported speech	
الفعل متبوع ب فعل ING	Verb  +  ING form	Admit (to)	He admitted (to) stealing/having stolen her money
		Accuse somebody of	She accused me of breaking the cup.
		Apologize for	He apologized for shouting/having shouted at me.
		Complain to someone of	He demanded to be told the truth.
		Deny	He denied murdering/having murdered his wife.
		Insist on	She insisted on me/my wearing warm clothes.
		Suggest	She suggested going to the theatre.
الفعل متبوع ب that	Verb  +  That  +  clause	Complain	She complained that I was always late.
		Deny	She denied that she had flown in an aeroplane.
		Explain	He explained that it was an easy recipe to follow.
		Exclaim/remark	She exclaimed/remarked that he was a beautiful baby
		Promise	She promised that she would call me.
		Boast	He boasted that he was a brilliant dentist.
		Inform somebody	He informed me that I would be called for an interview.
		Claim	He claimed that he knew the answer.
		Agree	He agreed that it was a beautiful hat.
Suggest	He suggested that I (should) take the other road.		
الفعل + how	Verb + how	Explain to someone	He explained to me how to make polite conversation.
يتعجب	wonder	Wonder where/what/why/ how + clause	She wondered how he could reach the top.  He wondered where Joan was.
		Wonder + whether + to-inf or clause	He wondered whether to buy that blender.
		Wonder where/what/how + to- inf or clause	He wondered where he had gone wrong in his calculations.  He wondered how to get to the post office.

بعض القواعد التي يجب عليك عزيزي الطالب الإلتزام بها في:

### 1 – الأسئلة المنقولة reporting questions :

- موجودة في الجدول كاملاً
- موجودة في الجدول كاملاً
- موجودة في الجدول ( 6 / 2 )
- موجودة في الجدول ( 2 / 1 )

- ضع نقطة (.) في نهاية الجملة بدلاً من علامة الإستفهام(?)
- غير الزمن والضمير في الجملة
- احذف الكلمات التالية من السؤال : ( do / did / does )
- في حال كان السؤال جوابه نعم أو لا استخدم الكلمات التالية ( if / whether )

He asked + If / whether + Sub + verb

- موجودة في الجدول كاملاً
- موجودة في الجدول (6)

- استخدم الكلمات التالية ( wondered / wanted to know / asked / inquired )
- في حال استخدام ( Wh-q ) استخدم نفس الكلمات وقم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات

الجدول التالي توضيح لما سبق

	Direct questions	Reported questions
1	Is he ready?	He asked if he was ready.
2	Where do they go?	He asked where they gone.
3	How much does it need to be in Aqaba?	He asked how much it needed to be in Aqaba.
4	Did you know about that yesterday?	She wondered if he had known about that the day before.
5	Have you been to Amman lately?	She wanted to know whether he had been to Amman lately.
6	When did you start running?	He wondered when she had started running.

### 2 – صيغة الأمر Imperative forms :

- نستخدم الأفعال التالية ( advised / promised / told ) وأفعال أخرى تجدها في الجدول الثاني صفحة 28 ( الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها مفعول به )
- نستخدم ( to / not to ) قبل فعل الأمر

لاحظ المثال التالي : She warned me not to go near the oven.

### 3 – نقل الجمل الخبرية ( reporting statement ) راجع الجدول صفحة 26

- نستخدم : 1 – Sub + told + obj
- 2 – Sub + ( said / added / replied / advised ) + ( that )



## المبنى للمجهول Passive voice

المبنى للمجهول يتم استخدامه في اللغة العربية أو اللغة الإنجليزية لإخفاء الفاعل, لماذا يتم إخفاء الفاعل؟ أما خوفاً عليه أو الخوف منه أو عدم معرفة الفاعل. فلنفترض عزيزي الطالب أن أحمد قام بكسر زجاج نافذة البيت, وعند قدوم الأب من العمل بلغت الأم الوالد بأن الزجاج كُسر. لاحظ عزيزي الطالب أننا قمنا بإخفاء الفاعل وهو أحمد أي قدمنا جملة تحتوي على مفعول به وهو الزجاج و فعل وهو كسر, ولم نقم بإضافة الفاعل وهو أحمد. لنقم عزيزي الطاب بتحويل الجملة التي استخدمناها مسبقاً:

Active: Ahmad **breaks** the window.

Passive: the window is **broken**

بأمكاننا إضافة "بواسطة أحمد" على الجملة السابقة للتعريف عن الفاعل Ahmad by

لاحظ الجدول التالي لتمييز بين المبنى للمجهول ضمن الأزمنة

Tense	المبنى للمعلوم Active	المبنى للمجهول Passive
present simple	I <b>make</b> a cake.	A cake <b>is made</b> (by me).
present continuous	I <b>am making</b> a cake.	A cake <b>is being made</b> (by me).
past simple	I <b>made</b> a cake.	A cake <b>was made</b> (by me).
past continuous	I <b>was making</b> a cake.	A cake <b>was being made</b> (by me).
present perfect	I <b>have made</b> a cake.	A cake <b>has been made</b> (by me).
pres. perf. continuous	I <b>have been making</b> a cake.	A cake <b>has been being made</b> (by me).
past perfect	I <b>had made</b> a cake.	A cake <b>had been made</b> (by me).
future simple	I <b>will make</b> a cake.	A cake <b>will be made</b> (by me).
future perfect	I <b>will have made</b> a cake.	A cake <b>will have been made</b> (by me).

قواعد المبنى للمجهول:

- 1 – يجب دائماً استخدام التصريف الثالث من الفعل Verb3 / past participle
- 2 – يفضل استخدام by وما بعدها لتكون إجابتك وافية
- 3 – ضع المفعول به في أول الجملة ثم الفعل في المبنى للمجهول
- 4 – من الممكن أن يطلب منك تحويل المبنى للمجهول إلى المبنى للمعلوم لذلك تمرن على المبنى للمعلوم أيضاً

## If conditional الجملة الشرطية

الجملة الشرطية تقسم ل 4 أنواع : سنتعرف عليهم جميعاً من خلال الجداول الآتية

Zero conditional الحالة صفر	
Structure بناء الجملة	If + present simple, ..... present simple
Usage الإستخدام	Things are <b>always</b> true حقيقة ثابتة النتيجة دائماً صحيحة
Examples أمثلة	If you freeze water, it turns into ice. If heat water at 100 degrees, it boils. I get tired if I work too much.
first conditional الحالة الأولى	
Structure بناء الجملة	If + present simple, ..... simple future
Usage الإستخدام	Possibilities in the present or future احتمالات أو إمكانية حصول الشيء في الحاضر أو المستقبل
Examples أمثلة	If it rains, I will stay at home. If I wake up late, I will miss the bus. You will pass the exam If you study hard
second conditional الحالة الثانية	
Structure بناء الجملة	If + past simple, ..... would/wouldn't + verb I
Usage الإستخدام	Imaginary situation in the present or future موقف خيالي في الحاضر والمستقبل
Examples أمثلة	If I won a million dollars, I would buy a house. If I were you. I would quit smoking. I would stop working If I won a million dollars.
third conditional الحالة الثالثة	
Structure بناء الجملة	If + past perfect, ..... would / wouldn't + have + Past participle
Usage الإستخدام	Imaginary situation in the past Impossible موقف خيالي في الماضي أي مستحيل
Examples أمثلة	If I had got a gold medal, I would have been happy. If I had meet you last week, I would have given you a hug. You would have caught the train if you had got up earlier.

## Causative verbs السببية

تستخدم السببية للإشارة على أن شخص ما قام عني/عنا بالفعل ( أو جعلت / جعلنا هذا الشخص يقوم بالفعل )  
انظر الجدول التالي والذي يبسط الأزمنة

Present Simple	<i>I have my car fixed.</i>
Present Progressive	<i>I'm having my car fixed.</i>
Past Simple	<i>I had my car fixed.</i>
Past Progressive	<i>I was having my car fixed.</i>
Future will	<i>I'll have my car fixed.</i>
Present Perfect Simple	<i>I've had my car fixed.</i>
Past Perfect Simple	<i>I had had my car fixed.</i>
Modal Verbs	<i>I must have my car fixed.</i>
Future going to	<i>I'm going to have my car fixed.</i>
Imperative	<i>Have my car fixed.</i>
Present Infinitive	<i>I managed to have my car fixed.</i>
-ing form	<i>I remember having my car fixed.</i>

قواعد السببية

1 - بناء القاعدة بشكل عام sub + Have (get) + object + v3

2 - صيغة السؤال والنفي من المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط للصيغة السببية تُصاغ مع الأفعال المساعدة do , does, did

3 - في اللغة غير الرسمية أو المتحدثة فإننا نستخدم get بدلا من Have

4 - إذا أردنا أن نضيف من قام بالحدث فإننا نضيف by

أمثلة:

Khaled didn't write his lesson

he had his lesson written.

I asked someone to fix my computer

I had my computer fixed by someone.

## Gerunds and infinitive

قواعد:

1. صيغة (gerund) هي بكل بساطة (ing+verb) مثل: ( playing / taking / working / listening / writing )
2. صيغة (infinitive) هي (verb+to) مثل: ( to play / to take / to work / to listen / to write )
3. صيغة (infinitive without to) هي الفعل فقط بدون أي إضافات مثل: ( play / take / work / listen / write )

Verbs followed by infinitive (to +verb)	Verbs followed by gerund (Ving)
Plan / want / intend / able to / decide Agree / hope / used to	Stop / dislike / finish / practice Suggest / enjoy / avoid / love / consider

## Modals of speculation / possibility التخمين والإحتمال

أفعال التخمين: وهي الأفعال التي تشير في الجملة على احتمالية حدوث شيء إليك الجدول الآتي:

التخمين / الإحتمالية	الكلمات الدلالية	طبيعة الفعل
Must	Sure / definitely / certain	الفعل مثبت
Can't	Sure / definitely / certain	الفعل منفي
Might	Not Sure / not certain / probable / perhaps / possible	الفعل مثبت
Mightn't	Not Sure / not certain / probable / perhaps / possible	الفعل منفي

Present simple = **modal +inf**

Pastsimple/ present perfect = **modal +have+ v3**

Present continuous = **modal +be+v-ing**

قواعد : 1 – ابحث عن الدليل (الكلمات الدلالية) واحذفه. 2 – انظر للفعل الرئيسي هل هو مثبت أم منفي وما الزمن المستخدم.

3 – استخدم التخمين / الإحتمالية كما هو موضح في الجدول

مثال توضيحي:

I am **certain** that the weather is nice.

The weather must be nice.

## Part One : Comprehension ( 10 points )

\* Read the following text then answer the questions that follow:

Young people love learning, but they like learning even more if they are presented with information in an interesting and challenging way. Today, I am going to give a talk about how you can use technology in Jordanian classrooms.

Many classrooms now use a whiteboard as a computer screen. As a consequence, teachers can show websites on the board in front of the class. Teachers can then use the Internet to show educational programmes, play educational games, music, recordings of languages, and so on.

In some countries, tablet computers are available for students to use in class. Therefore, students can use the tablets to do tasks such as showing photographs, researching information, recording interviews and creating diagrams. Tablets are ideal for pair and group work.

Teachers can perhaps ask their students to start writing *a blog* (an online diary), either about their own lives or as if they were someone famous. They can also create a website for the classroom. Students can contribute to the website, so for example they can post work, photos and messages.

Another way of communicating with other schools is through talking to people over the computer. Most computers have cameras, so you can also see the people you are talking to. You can also use this system to invite guest speakers to give talks over a computer.

Students often use computers at home if **they** have them. Students can use social media on their computers to help them with their studies, including asking other students to check and compare their work, asking questions and sharing ideas. The teacher must be part of the group to monitor what is happening.

1. Teachers can use the internet for many and different purposes. Write down two of them. (2 points )

.....

2. According to the text , what could be used to create diagrams ? (1 point)

.....

3. Write down the sentence that indicates the role of the teacher of following the development. (1 point)

.....

4. Students can contribute to the class website. How? (2 points )

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun( **they**) in the last paragraph refer to ? (1 point )

.....

6. Find a word in the text that means a mobile computer, with a touch screen, processor and battery all in one unit (1 points )

.....

7. Do you think using technology in Jordanian classrooms is useful? Write down your opinion showing the positive and negative impacts of it . (2 points )

.....  
.....

## Part Two : Vocabulary ( 7 points )

1. Fill in the spaces with a word from the box : ( 5 points )

<b>floppy disk , whiteboard , calculation, share, create , identity fraud</b>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

1. Many schools use the.....to enhance the education process in the class.
2. Increasingly, technological criminals are using computers to commit illegal actions like..... to buy things or reach bank accounts.
3. Before the invention of the ..... , it had not been possible to store and transfer data between computers.
4. Communicating through the Internet has helped many people to ..... ideas.
5. The computer can do millions of .....s each second.

2. Explain the difference in meaning between these sentences: ( 2 points )

- Students should be able to **create a website** for their class.
  - It is possible for some students to **contribute to a website**.
- .....  
.....  
.....

## Part Three : Structure ( 13 points )

1. Correct the verbs between brackets : ( 9 points )

1. It started to snow while we.....out there. ( play )
2. The car..... in the garage last week. ( paint )
3. After the others..... ,we went to bed. ( leave )
4. look ! The bridge ..... down. ( fall )
5. Sami..... that book yet. ( not, copy (
6. By the time we arrived, they had .....for an hour. ( be , talk (

- 7.If she ..... hard , she will fail in her exam . ( not , study)
8. My neighbor doesn't clean his car himself. He has it..... ( clean)
9. You should avoid ..... T.V more than an hour a day . ( watch )

**2. Re-write these sentences : ( 4 points )**

1. "I'm making a trip to Petra next week."

Suzan said that.....

2. I am sure they didn't take the money.

They.....

3. Ali tidied his office, and then he went home.

After Ali .....

4. I asked a specialist to mend my house.

I .....

الأجابات النموذجية للإمتحان

1. Teachers can then use the Internet to show educational programmes, play educational games, music, recordings of languages
2. tablet computers
3. The teacher must be part of the group to monitor what is happening. 4. They can post work, photos and messages.
5. Students
6. Tablet computers
7. open answer

**1. whiteboard 2. identity fraud 3. floppy disk 4. share 5. calculation**

Create a website To construct a website that currently does not exist Contribute a website Offer your writing and work to the website.

1. were playing 2. Was painted 3. Had left 4. Is falling 5. Hasn't copied 6. Been talking 7. Doesn't study 8. Cleaned 9. Watching
1. She was making a trip to Petra the following week .
2. They can't have taken the money .
3. After Ali had tidied his office , he went home .
4. I had my house mended.

## Part One : Comprehension ( 12 points )

\* Read the following text then answer the questions that follow

### A ) What is the ' Internet of Things ' ?

Everyone knows that the Internet connects people, but now it does more than that - it connects objects, too. These days, computers often communicate with each other; for example, your TV automatically downloads your favorite TV show, or your ' sat nav ' system tells you where you are. This is known as the ' Internet of Things ', and there's a lot more to come.

### B ) An easy life !

In just a few years' time, experts say that billions of machines will be connected to each other and to the Internet. As a consequence, computers will increasingly run our lives for us. For example, your fridge will know when you need more milk and add **it** to your online shopping list; your windows will close if it is likely to rain; your watch will record your heart rate and email your doctor; and your sofa will tell you when you need to stand up and get some exercise!

### C ) A frightening future

Many people are excited about the ' Internet of Things '. For them, a dream is coming true. They say that our lives will be easier and more comfortable. However, others are not so sure. They want to keep control of their own lives and their own things. In addition, they wonder what would happen if criminals managed to access their passwords and security settings. The dream could easily become a nightmare!

1. How will the internet of thing help you to keep fit, according to the text? Give one example . ( 2 points )

.....

2. There are many examples that show that our lives will be run by computers in the future. Write down two of these examples . ( 2points )

.....

3. What does the underlined pronoun " **it** " , second paragraph, refer to ? ( 2 points )

.....

4. Find a word in the text which means " **to find information, especially on a computer** " . ( 2 points )

.....

5. Quote ( Write down ) the sentence which indicates and justifies **why** some people find the idea of the ' Internet of Things ' exciting. ( 2 points )

.....

.....

6. The Internet is a double-edged weapon( **exciting and worrying** ). Think of this statement and, in **two** sentences, write down your point of view. ( 2 points )

.....

.....





**2. Choose the suitable item to complete the following sentences : ( 10 points )**

1. If we had managed our time carefully , we ..... the prize .  
( would get , will get , would have got )
2. The car..... in the garage last week.  
( were painted , is painted , was painted , painted )
4. look ! The bridge ..... down.  
( is falling , was falling , fell , had fallen )
3. After the others..... ,we went to bed.  
( leave , was leaving , were leaving , had left )
5. she decided ..... Law at university .  
( study , studying , to study , studied )

**3. Complete the following sentences ( 3 points )**

1. I am sure the gardener didn't water the plants. They are dead.  
The gardener.....
2. My brother asked someone to paint the house .  
My brother .....
3. " My friends saw a terrible accident yesterday " .  
Ahmed said that .....

الإجابات النموذجية للإمتحان

1. Your watch will record your heart rate and email your doctor; and your sofa will tell you when you need to stand up and get some exercise!
2. Your fridge will know when you need more milk and add **it** to your online shopping list; your windows will close if it is likely
3. Milk
4. Access
5. They say that our lives will be easier and more comfortable.
6. Open answer

=====

1. would have got 2. Was painted 3. Is falling 4. Had left 5. to study

=====

1. can't have watered the plant .
2. my brother had the house painted .
3. his friend had seen a terrible accident the day before .

# Action Pack 12

المستوى الثالث

المنهاج الجديد

الوحدة الثانية Unit 2

Health

الصحة

Teacher: Sohaib Yaser 0788650494

## Complementary medicine: is it really a solution?

paragraph	
<p>Most doctors used to be sceptical about the validity of homoeopathy, acupuncture and other forms of complementary medicine. If patients wanted to receive this kind of non-conventional treatment, <u>they</u> used to have to consult a private practitioner who was likely not to have a medical degree. However, in recent years, the perception of this type of treatment has changed. These days, many family doctors study complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments, and many complementary medicine consultants also have medical degrees.</p>	<p>لطالما كان الأطباء متشككون في فاعلية وصحة الطب المثلي (التكميلي /التداوي بالأعشاب او بعض المواد) والوخز بالإبر واشكال اخرى من الطب التكميلي. إذا رغب المريض بالتداوي بمثل هذه العلاجات غير التقليدية، فإنه يتوجب عليهم أن يستشيروا من يمارس هذا الطب والذين بالأغلب لا يحملون درجة علمية (شهادة طبية). وعلى اية حال، في السنوات الأخيرة، اختلف مفهوم هذا النوع من العلاج. فالعديد من أطباء العائلة هذه الأيام يدرسون الطب التكميلي جنباً إلى جنب مع الطب التقليدي. والعديد من المداويين بالطب التكميلي يحملون شهادات في الطب أيضاً.</p>
<p>Whereas critics used to say that there was no scientific evidence that non-conventional treatments actually worked, now it is more common for medical experts to recognise that conventional medicine may not always be the only way to treat an ailment.</p>	<p>لطالما قال النقاد أن الطب التكميلي لا يمتلك اي دليل علمي بأن المعالجة به نافعة، و إنه من الشائع ان الخبراء الطبيون اصبحوا مدركين ان الطب البديل او التكميلي هو ليس دائما الطريقة الوحيدة لعلاج الأمراض الخفيفة.</p>
<p>At a surgery in London, 70 per cent of patients <u>who</u> were offered the choice between a herbal or a conventional medicine for common complaints such as insomnia, arthritis and migraines chose the herbal remedy. Fifty per cent of patients then said that the treatment helped. One doctor said, "I now consider homoeopathy to be a viable option for many different conditions, including anxiety, depression and certain allergies. It provides another option when conventional medicine does not address the problem adequately."</p>	<p>في احد عيادات الطب الجراحي في لندن، % 70 من المرضى الذين خيروا بين العلاج بالأعشاب او اي علاج تكميلي بديل لشكاوى شائعة مثل الأرق والتهاب المفاصل والشقيقة اختاروا التداوي بالأعشاب. وقال عندها % 50 من المرضى عندها أن العلاج ساعدهم. قال احد الأطباء "انا الآن اخذ بعين الإعتبار ان الطب البديل التكميلي هو خيار قابل للنجاح للعديد من الحالات بما فيها القلق والإكتئاب وبعض الحساسية. فهي توفر خيار آخر عندما لا ينفع الطب التقليدي بشكل دقيق.</p>
<p>However, complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments. <b>It</b> can never substitute for immunisations as it will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. It also cannot be used to protect against malaria.</p>	<p>على اية حال، لا يمكن للطب البديل ان يُستخدم لكل الإستطببات العلاجية. لا يمكنها ان تحل محل عمليات التطعيم/التلقيح لأنها لن تنتج الأجسام المضادة والتي نحتاجها لتحمينا من أمراض الطفولة. ولا يمكنها ايضا ان تحمينا من الملاريا.</p>
<p>One doctor said, "I will always turn to conventional medical treatment first to ensure that no underlying condition is missed. However, the idea of complementary treatments is no longer an alien concept. In my opinion, it should work alongside modern medicine, and not against it."</p>	<p>اعرب احد الأطباء انه سيقوم بالعودة للعلاجات الطبية التقليدية أولاً ليتأكد انه لم يمر عن اي حالة خفية. وعلى ايه حال، فإن العلاج بالطب البديل لم تعد فكرة غريبة. في رأيه يجب على الطب البديل ان يعمل جنباً إلى جنب مع الطب الحديث وليس ضده.</p>

**Words must be saved**

**كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً**

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Complementary	مكتمل	Family	عائلة	Patient	مرريض	Anxiety	قلق
Medicine	دواء	Alongside	جنباً إلى جنب	Offer	يعرض	Depression	إكتئاب
Solution	حل	Whereas	في حين	Choice	اختيار	Certain	مؤكد
Sceptical	شكاك	Critics	ناقد	Herbal	عشبي	Address(v)	يخاطب
Validity	صلاحية	Scientific	علمي	Complaint	شكوى	Adequately	على نحو كافٍ
Homoeopathy	طب الأعشاب	Evidence	دليل	Insomnia	أرق	Substitute	بديل
Acupuncture	الوخز بالإبر	Actually	حقاً	Arthritis	إلتهاب مفاصل	Immunisation	تحصين
Forms	نماذج	Common	شائع	Migraines	صداع نصفي	Antibodies	أجسام مضادة
Conventional	تقليدي	Recognise	يعترف	chose	اختار	Against	ضد
Treatment	علاج	may	ربما	Remedy	علاج	Childhood	طفولة
Consult	يستشير	Always	دائماً	Consider	يعتبر	Disease	مرض
Private	خاص	Only	فقط	Viable	قابل للحياة	Malaria	مرض الملاريا
Practitioner	ممارس	Ailment	مرض	Option	خيار	Ensure	يؤكد
Degree	درجة	Surgery	عملية	Different	مختلف	Underlying	أساسي
Recent	قريب / حديث	London	عاصمة بريطانيا لندن	Condition	حالة	Missed	أغفل
Perception	إدراك	Per cent	بالمئة	Including	يتضمن	Alien	فضائي ( غريب)
						Concept	مفهوم
						opinion	رأي

Words	Meanings (E)	Words
acupuncture (n)	a system of complementary medicine in which fine needles are inserted in the skin at specific points.	الوخز بالإبر
ailment (n)	illness.	مرض خفيف
allergy (n) allergic (adj)	a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash.	تحسس/حساسية
arthritis (n) arthritic (adj)	a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints.	إلتهاب المفاصل
herbal remedy (n)	an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent,	التداوي بالأعشاب
remedy (v)	alleviate, or cure disease. remedial (adj)	تداوي
homoeopathy (n)	a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances.	المعالجة المثلية
immunisation (n)	the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness. immunise (v) immune (adj)	التلقيح
malaria (n)	a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes.	مرض الملاريا
migraine (n)	a very bad headache which often comes with a feeling of sickness and problems with vision.	الصداع النصفي الشقيقة
antibody (n)	a substance produced by the body to fight disease.	الجسم المضاد
complementary- medicine	medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices. complement (v)	الطب البديل الطب التكميلي

conventional (adj)	having been used for a long time and is considered usual. convention (n) conventionally (adv)	تقليدي
option (n) optional (adj)	something that is or may be chosen.	خيار
viable (adj) viability (n)	effective and able to be successful.	قابل للنجاح
practitioner (n)	someone who is qualified or registered to practise a	من يمارس مهنة او
practise (v)	particular occupation or profession. practical (adj) practically (adv)	مهارة
sceptical (adj) sceptic (n) scepticism (n)	having doubts; not easily convinced.	متشكك

## QUESTIONS

## أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية

- 1- What medical conditions may be possible to treat using complementary medicine?
- 2- Read the article again, and decide if these sentences are true or false. Correct the false sentences. SB: p15
  - a- Doctors and patients didn't use to be convinced that complementary forms of medicine work.
  - b- Nowadays, many doctors study complementary forms of treatment.
  - c- At the surgery mentioned in the article, the majority of patients found that the herbal remedy did not help them.
  - d- Complementary medicine can work as a replacement for immunisations or to treat malaria.
- 3- (Critical Thinking/Brain Storming) The article suggests that people's perception of complementary medicine has changed over time. Why do you think this is the case? SB: p15
- 4- "Complementary treatments should work alongside modern medicine, not against it." SB: p15 Explain this statement in two sentences, justifying your answer with examples from the article.
- 5- What were most doctors' feelings like regarding homoeopathy?
- 6- Who practices homoeopathy? Mention two parties.
- 7- What is the situation now regarding nonconventional (complementary) medicine?
- 8- Give a word from the text which means the same as "illness".
- 9- Can conventional medicine always be the only way to treat an ailment?
- 10- What did people in a surgery in London choose when they were offered choice between a herbal or a modern medicine? Why?
- 11- What is the opinion of the doctors mentioned in the text? Your answer should be based on two paragraphs.
- 12- Quote the sentence which indicates that doctors now deal with nonconventional treatment.
- 13- What is the problem with complementary medicine? Why can't it replace modern medicine?
- 14- What do the underlined words/pronouns in the above text refer to? Select 5 only.

## MODEL ANSWERS

- 1- Common complaints such as: insomnia, arthritis and migraines, anxiety, depression and certain allergies.
- 2- a- True b- True c- False. Fifty per cent of patients said it helped. d- False. Complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments.
- 3- People's perception of complementary medicine has changed because they found that these types of treatment worked with no side effects, they also found that conventional doctors were studying more and more about these non-conventional ways of treatment.
- 4- Doctors should use complementary treatments with the scientific ways they have learned. They should not neglect/ignore them nor depend on them all the time. They should use them to cure common complaints such as: insomnia, arthritis and migraines, anxiety, depression and certain allergies.
- 5- Most doctors used to be sceptical about the validity of homoeopathy and other forms of complementary medicine.
- 6- Private practitioners and conventional doctors practice homoeopathy.

- 7- The idea of complementary treatments is no longer an alien concept, it should work alongside modern medicine, and not against it.
- 8- Complaints.
- 9- No, because the writer mentions that non-conventional (complementary) medicine provides another option when conventional medicine does not address the problem adequately.
- 10- They chose the herbal remedy maybe because they were fed up with modern medicine.
- 11- One doctor said that he then considered homoeopathy to be a viable option for many different conditions. Another doctor said that he would always turn to conventional medical treatment first to ensure that no underlying condition was missed.
- 12- These days, many family doctors study complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments, and many complementary medicine consultants also have medical degrees.
- 13- Complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments. It can never substitute for immunisations as it will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. It also cannot be used to protect against malaria.
- 14- they :patients / who: a private practitioner / I: one doctor / It/it /It: complementary medicine  
I/my :one doctor / it :complementary treatment / it :modern medicine

**Q1 Match the phrases in the table with the correct meanings. One word is not needed. The first one is done for you. VOCABULARY- WB; p. 11**

المفردات

Acupuncture	homoeopathy	ailment
arthritis	immunisation	
malaria	allergies	migraine

- |                                                                                  |              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 a serious illness that is spread by mosquitoes                                 | malaria      |
| 2 a disease that causes pain and swelling in joints                              | arthritis    |
| 3 an illness or disease which is not very serious                                | ailment      |
| 4 giving a drug to protect against illness                                       | immunisation |
| 5 an extremely bad headache                                                      | migraine     |
| 6 a form of complementary medicine which uses thin needles                       | Acupuncture  |
| 7 conditions that make you ill when you eat, touch or breathe a particular thing | allergies    |

**Q2: Complete the sentences with words from exercise 1. The first one is done for you. WP; P11**

- |                                                                                             |              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 My grandfather has arthritis in his fingers, so he sometimes finds it difficult to write. |              |
| 2 to nuts and milk are becoming more common.                                                | Allergies    |
| 3 Many serious diseases can be prevented by , which helps the body to build antibodies.     | Immunisation |
| 4 Headaches and colds are common s, especially in winter.                                   | ailment      |
| 5 If you have a , the best thing to do is take some medicine and rest somewhere quiet.      | Migraine     |

## Are happier people healthier – and, if so, why?

Paragraph	ترجمة الفقرة
<p>It's normal to feel a bit blue from time to time. However, studies show that negative emotions can harm the body.</p> <p>Anger can also have harmful effects on health. When you see red, your blood pressure is raised and you can suffer from headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems. However, what about positive feelings and attitudes? Until recently, scientists had not investigated whether there is a link between positive feelings and good health.</p>	<p>من الطبيعي ان تشعر بالقليل من الحزن من حين لآخر. بالرغم من أن الدراسات اظهرت أن المشاعر السلبية يمكن أن تؤذي الجسم.</p> <p>يمكن ان يكون للغضب ايضا تأثيرات مؤذية على الصحة. عندما تغضب، يرتفع ضغط الدم لديك ويمكن أن تعاني من الصداع ومشاكل في النوم ومشاكل في الهضم. ولكن ماذا عن المشاعر والإتجاهات الإيجابية؟ لم يستطع العلماء حتى الآن التحري واكتشاف ما اذا كان هناك علاقة بين المشاعر الإيجابية والصحة الجيدة.</p>
<p>Then, in a study that had followed more than 6,000 men and women aged 25 to 74 for 20 years, researchers found that positivity reduced the risk of heart disease. Other factors influencing health included a supportive network of family and friends, and an optimistic outlook on life.</p>	<p>في دراسة تتبعت اكثر من 6000 رجل وامرأة تراوحت اعمارهم بين 25-74 لمدة 20 سنة. وجد الباحثون ان الايجابية قللت من خطر مرض القلب. ومن العوامل الاخرى التي تؤثر على صحة تشمل وجود شبكة من الاقارب والاصدقاء داعمين للشخص وتقاتل في الحياة.</p>
<p>The research showed that children who were more able to stay focused on a task, and who had a more positive attitude to life at age seven, were usually in better health 30 years later. The study has been controversial. Some health professionals believe that bad lifestyle choices, such as smoking or lack of exercise, are the reason for heart disease and other illnesses, and not an individual's attitude. The researchers, while agreeing, raise the question: why are people making bad lifestyle decisions? Do more optimistic people make better and healthier lifestyle choices?</p>	<p>أظهرت الدراسات أن الأطفال اللذين يملكون قدرة اكبر على التركيز على مهمة معينة والذين لديهم اتجاهات اكثر ايجابية في الحياة في عمر السابعة كانوا عادة في حالة صحية افضل بعد 30 عام. لقد كانت الدراسة جدلية. يؤمن بعض المختصين في الصحة بأن الخيارات السيئة في اسلوب الحياة مثل التدخين وقلة التمارين هي السبب وراء امراض القلب وامراض اخرى، وليس اتجاهاتهم الشخصية. تساءل الباحثون وهم موافقون على الفكرة عن السبب الذي يجعل الناس يتخذون قرارات تقود حياتهم للسلبية. هل يقوم الناس المتفائلون باتخاذ خيارات حياتية افضل واكثر صحية؟</p>
<p>The researchers appreciate that not everyone's personal circumstances and environment make it possible to live without worry. However, they believe that if we teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.</p>	<p>يقدر العلماء انه ليس كل انسان عنده ظروف و بيئة تعطيه الفرصة ليعيش حياة بدون قلق. ولكنهم يؤمنون انه اذا تمكنا من تعليم الأطفال ان يطوروا تفكيراً ايجابياً وأن ينهضوا بعد كل سقوط ستحسن صحتهم بشكل عام في المستقبل.</p>

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها جيداً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Normal	طبيعي	suffer	يعاني	Network	شبكة	Appreciate	يقدر
Feel	يشعر	Headache	ألم رأس	Optimistic	متفائل	Circumstance	ظرف
Bit	قليل	digestive	هضم	Outlook	مظهر	Environment	بيئة
Negative	سليبي	Positive	إيجابي	focus	يركز	Worry	قلق
Emotion	مشاعر	Attitude	سلوك	Task	مهمة	Develop	يطور
Harm	يضر	Investigate	يحقق (في قضية)	Better	أفضل	Bounce	يرتد
Body	جسم	link	يصل (بشيء)	Controversial	جدلي خلاف	Quality	جودة
Anger	غضب	Reduce	يقلل	Professional	محترف	Improve	يطور
Effect	تأثير	Risk	مخاطر	Smoking	يدخن / دخان	Overall	كلي / إجمالي
Health	صحة	Factors	عوامل	Lack	نقص		
Blood	دم	Influence	يأثر	Reason	سبب		

Pressure	ضغط	Include	يتضمن	Individual	فردى		
Raise	يرتفع	Supportive	داعم	Decision	قرار		

Words	Meanings (E)	Words
feel blue	to feel sad.	يشعر بالحزن
see red	to be angry.	يغضب
white elephant	something that has cost a lot of money but has no useful purpose.	مكلف بدون فائدة
have the green light	to have or give permission to go ahead with something or for something to happen.	يسمح / يُسمح له
red-handed	in the act of doing something wrong.	يرتكب حماقة يرتكب
out of the blue (adj)	apparently from nowhere; unexpectedly.	بشكل مفاجيء
bounce back	to start to be successful again after a difficult time.	النهوض بعد الفشل
focus on focus (n) focused (adj)	to direct your attention or effort at something specific.	يركز على
setback (n)	a problem that delays or stops progress, or makes a situation worse.	فشل / إخفاق
raise (v)	a question to bring up a problem or cast doubt on something.	يرفع/يسأل/يربى
optimistic(adj)optimism(n)optimist (n)	believing that good things will happen in the future.	التفاؤل

## QUESTIONS

## أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية

- 1- Do you ever feel yourself getting angry? What kind of things can make you angry?
- 2- Do you think that feeling angry is bad for you?
- 3- What are the possible effects of anger and stress on someone's health? SB
- 4- What is controversial about the researchers' study? SB
- 5- What is your opinion of the researchers' findings? SB
- 6- (Critical Thinking) Read the quotation by Thomas Carlyle "He who has health has hope; and he who has hope, has everything". Do you agree with it? Why/Why not?
- 7- What do the underlined words in the above text refer to? Pick five only.
- 8- How can we improve our children's overall health in the future?
- 9- Quote the sentence which indicates that childhood attitude is almost similar to your attitude when you grow up.
- 10- What do the underlined words in the text refer to?



## MODEL ANSWERS

1. Yes, sometimes I get so angry. For example, when my parents ask me to go to bed early.
- 2- Yes, of course. I believe it is bad for me.
- 3- Anger can also have harmful effects on health. When you see red, your blood pressure is raised and you can suffer from headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems.
- 4- The study has been controversial. Some health professionals believe that bad lifestyle choices, such as smoking or lack of exercise, are the reason for heart disease and other illnesses, and not an individual's attitude.
- 5- I think he is right. When people have bad life conditions when they are young, his/her future will probably be uncomfortable because childhood situations always affect the personality of human beings.
- 6- Yes, I agree. Because healthy life leads to success, and when you are successful, you enjoy everything, especially work.
- 7-That/ a study    who / who children    they /The researchers    their/ children
- 8- If we teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.
- 9- The research showed that children who were more able to stay focused on a task, and who had a more positive attitude to life at age seven, were usually in better health 30 years later.
- 10- emotions=feelings / scientists=researchers / optimistic= believing that good things will happen.

### SB: p.17 Ex.4

**A- What feeling does each idiom indicate? Use these: (happiness/sadness/fear/anger)**

1- feel a bit blue ..... 2- see red .....

**B- What do the underlined/bolded colour idioms mean?**

1- We've got **the green light** to go ahead with our project!

2 Luckily, the police arrived and the thief was caught **red-handed**.

3 I was shocked when I heard the news. It came completely **out of the blue**.

4 Nobody goes to the new private sports club. The building is **a white elephant**.

**Answers**

A: 1- sadness 2- anger.

B: 1- got permission 2- in the act of doing something wrong 3- unexpectedly

## Health in Jordan: A report

<p><b>Introduction</b></p> <p>Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. This is largely due to the country's commitment to making healthcare for all a top priority. Advances in education, economic conditions, sanitation, clean water, diet and housing have made our community healthier</p>	<p>مقدمة: تعد الصحة في الأردن من الأفضل في الشرق الأوسط. هذا بالأغلب يعزى لإلتزام الدولة بالتأمين الصحي لكل كأولوية. التطورات في التعليم والأوضاع الإقتصادية والتصرف المجاري والماء النظيف والحماية والإسكان كل ذلك جعل مجتمعا أكثر صحية.</p>
<p><b>A. Healthcare centres</b></p> <p>As a result of careful planning, the number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years. More than 800 different kinds of healthcare centres have been built, as well as 188 dental clinics. In 2012 CE, 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunised, thanks to immunisation teams that had been working towards this goal for several years. Although there were remote areas of the country where people had been without consistent access to electricity and safe water, almost 99 per cent of the country's population now has access.</p>	<p>وكنتيجة للتخطيط الحذر، تطور عدد الخدمات الصحية بشكل سريع في السنوات الأخيرة و تم بناء أكثر من 800 مركز صحي وأيضاً 188 عيادة لطب الأسنان. في عام 2012 98 بالمئة من الأطفال الأردنيين تم تلقيحهم بشكل تام بفضل فرق التطعيم والتي كانت ولا زالت تسعى وراء هذا الهدف لعدة سنوات. بالرغم من وجود مناطق نائية في الدولة والتي يكون بها الناس بدون اتصال ثابت بالكهرباء والماء النقي فإن الآن حوالي 99 بالمئة من سكان الدولة تتوفر لهم تلك الأشياء.</p>
<p><b>B. Hospitals</b></p> <p>Although the country has been focusing mainly on improving its primary healthcare facilities, it has not neglected its advanced medical facilities. The reputation of Jordanian doctors has spread in the region, and now many more patients come to Jordan for open heart surgery. In Jordan, the open heart surgery programme started in 1970 CE in Amman.</p>	<p>بالرغم من ان الدولة كانت تركز بشكل رئيسي على تطوير وتحسين المنشآت الصحية الأساسية، فإنها لم تهمل المنشآت الطبية المتطورة الخاصة بها. فلقد انتشرت هذه السمعة الطيبة عن الأطباء الأردنيين في المنطقة والعديد من المرضى يأتون إلى الأردن لعمليات القلب المفتوح. بدأ برنامج عمليات القلب المفتوح في عمان في عام 1970</p>
<p><b>C. Life expectancy</b></p> <p>The life expectancy figures show that Jordan's healthcare system is successful. In 1965 CE, the average Jordanian's life expectancy was age 50. In 2012 CE, this average life expectancy had risen to 73.5. According to UNICEF statistics, between 1981 CE and 1991 CE, Jordan's infant mortality rates declined more rapidly than anywhere else in the world – from 70 deaths per 1,000 births in 1981 CE to only 32 deaths per 1,000 births in 2014 CE.</p>	<p>إن ارقام متوسط العمر الافتراضي توضح ان النظام الصحي الأردني ناجح. ففي عام 1965 ميلادي كان معدل متوسط العمر الافتراضي في الاردن حوالي 50 عاما. في عام 2012 كان هذا المعدل للعمر الافتراضي قد ارتفع لحوالي 73.5. طبقاً لإحصاءات منظمة اليونيسيف فإنه بين عام 1981 و عام 1991 انخفض عدد وفيات المواليد بشكل سريع لم يُشهد في أي مكان في العالم – من 70 1000 كان يتوفى في 1981 الي 32 وفاة فقط من كل 1000 في عام 2014</p>
<p><b>Conclusion</b></p> <p>The low infant mortality rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system, have been contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth, which will result in a strong work force with economic benefits for the whole country.</p>	<p>ان المعدل المنخفض لوفيات الاطفال والنظام الصحي الممتاز كان من العوامل المساهمة في الزيادة السكانية الصحية والتي ينتج عنها قوى عاملة قوية وفوائد اقتصادية لكل البلد.</p>

**Words must be saved**

**كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً**

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Introduction	مقدمة	Clean	نظيف	Remote	بعيد / نائية	Average	معدل
Condition	شرط / حالة	Diet	حمية	Area	منطقة	Risen	ارتفع
Among	بين	Community	مجتمع	Consistent	متسق	Statistics	إحصائيات
Middle	أوسط	Planning	تخطيط	Electricity	كهرباء	Infant	رضيع
East	الشرق	Services	خدمات	Population	كثافة سكانية	Mortality	معدل وفيات
Largely	بشكل ضخم	Increasing	بشكل متزايد	mainly	بشكل رئيسي	Rates	معدلات
Due	بسبب	Rapidly	سريع	Primary	أساسي	Decline	يرفض
Country	منطقة	Dental	أسنان	Facilities	مباني	Death	وفيات
Commitment	إلتزام	clinic	عيادة	Neglected	مهمل / متروك	Birth	ولادة
Healthcare	الرعاية الصحية	Immunised	منيع / حصين	Medical	طبي	Conclusion	خاتمة / ملخص
Top	قمة	Immunisation	تحصين	Reputation	سمعة	Low	منخفض
priority	أولوية	Team	فريق	Spread	ينتشر	Contribute	يساهم
Advance	متقدم	Toward	للأمام	Region	منطقة	Factors	عوامل
Economic	اقتصاد	Goal	هدف	Expectancy	توقع	Growth	نمو
Sanitation	النظام الصحي	Several	العديد	Figures	أشخاص	benefits	فوائد

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربية
commitment (n) commit (v) committed (adj)	a promise to do something or to behave in a particular way.	إلتزام
healthcare (n)	the prevention or treatment of illness by doctors, dentists, psychologists, etc.	الرعاية الصحية
life expectancy (n) expect (v) expectation	the length of time that a person or animal is expected to live.	متوسط العمر المتوقع
mortality (n) mortal (n and adj) mortally (adv)	death, especially on a large scale (e.g. infant mortality); the rate of deaths that occur (mortality rate).	الوفيات
reputation (n) repute (v)	the common opinion that people have about someone or something.	السمعة
decline (v) decline (n)	to decrease in quantity or importance.	ينخفض

## QUESTIONS

## أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية

- 1- Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. Why do you think this is the case? Give examples.
- 2- Write down the sentence which shows the sectors that helped in making Jordan healthier.
- 3- What is the link between the introduction and the conclusion in this report?
- 4- Is the language formal or informal? How can you tell?
- 5- What is the title of the report?
- 6- What is the purpose of the sub-headings before different sections?
- 7- What made the number of healthcare services increase in Jordan over the past years?
- 8- What does the underlined word “dental” in the text mean?
- 9- What are the result of careful planning?
- 10- What is the achievement of the immunisation teams?
- 11- Did the government forget about the advanced healthcare facilities? What are the consequences of that?
- 12- What is the specific disease that Jordanian doctors are very professional at?
- 13- Give one example of life expectancy rate that was improved?
- 14- What led the Jordanian population to rise? Give a reason from the text and another from your knowledge.
- 15-(Critical Thinking/ Brain Storming) What illnesses are children in Jordan vaccinated against?
- 16- What are the underlined words/pronouns in the text refer to?

## MODEL ANSWERS

- 1- Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. This is largely due to the country’s commitment to making healthcare for all a top priority. The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years and 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunized. Life expectancy had risen to 73.5 and infant mortality rates have fallen down.
- 2- Advances in education, economic conditions, sanitation, clean water, diet and housing have made our community healthier.
- 3- ‘Health conditions are among the best in the Middle East’ and ‘Advances ... have made our community healthier’ links with ‘excellent healthcare system’ and ‘contributing factors to Jordan’s healthy population growth’.
- 4- The language is formal. There are no contractions; the sentences are quite long, with relative pronouns, etc.; the vocabulary is formal; there are linking expressions such as: As a result of, According to and Although; the statistics included add to the formality.
- 5- Health in Jordan: A report.
- 6- They tell the reader what the section will be about. If it is a very long report, they are very useful in helping the reader to find particular pieces of information and making the text easier to read.
- 7- The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years as a result of careful planning.
- 8- Dental means: relating to the teeth.
- 9- The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years. More than 800 different kinds of healthcare centres have been built, as well as 188 dental clinics. In 2012 CE, 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunized. Almost 99 per cent of the country’s population now has access to electricity and safe water.
- 10- 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunised, thanks to immunisation teams that had been working towards this goal for several years.
- 11- The country has not neglected its advanced medical facilities. The reputation of Jordanian doctors has spread in the region, and now many more patients come to Jordan for open heart surgery.
- 12- Jordanian doctors are very professional at open heart surgery. Many more patients come to Jordan for it.

13- Jordan's infant mortality rates declined more rapidly than anywhere else in the world.

14- The low infant mortality rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system, have been contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth.

15- Children in Jordan are vaccinated against tetanus, polio, measles, and smallpox.

16-That: immunisation teams /where: remote areas of the country /its/it /: the country

## Get Moving!

<p><b>A- A growing problem</b> In many countries, an increasing number of young people and adults are overweight or even obese. One reason for this is the growing popularity of fast food, which didn't use to be as common as it is now. (1) Another big factor is lack of exercise. People would often walk to school or work, but these days many more of us drive. Modern technology has also played its part; we spend more and more time focusing on computer screens. Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.</p>	<p>مشكلة في تزايد: يوجد في العديد من الدول عدد متزايد من الصغار والبالغين الذين يعانون من السمنة أو حتى زيادة الوزن المفرطة. يعد شيوع الطعام السريع (الجاهز) والذي لم يكن شائعاً في السابق أحد الأسباب. والعامل الكبير الثاني هو قلة التمارين. كان الناس في السابق يمشون إلى المدرسة أو العمل ولكن هذه الأيام العديد منا يستقل السيارة. وقد لعبت التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورها الكبير في ذلك فنقضي وقتاً أكثر وأكثر محدقين في شاشات الكمبيوتر. لم يحلم أحد في التسوق عبر الإنترنت قبل اختراع الإنترنت ولكن الآن يمكننا شراء كل شيء بدون مغادرة الأريكة.</p>
<p><b>B- Time to listen</b> Health experts have been warning about this trend for years, and their advice is clear. Adults should aim to exercise for at least two and a half hours every week; for children and teenagers the target should be at least an hour a day. This might not sound very much. However, recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this. (2) School children are less physically active than they used to be. Girls in particular often dislike PE. This can lead to serious health problems.</p>	<p>حان الوقت للإصغاء: لطالما حذر خبراء الصحة من هذا الميول ونصحتهم واضحة. يجب على البالغين التمرن لساعتين ونصف في الأسبوع على الأقل، أما الأطفال والمراهقين فيجب عليهم التمرن لساعة يومياً على الأقل. وقد يبدو هذا ليس بالكثير. لكن الدراسات تثبت أن 50 بالمائة من البريطانيين لا يتمكنون من ذلك. إن أطفال المدارس أقل نشاطاً جسدياً مما كانوا عليه في السابق. تكره الفتيات خصوصاً حصص اللياقة البدنية/الرياضة. قد يؤدي هذا إلى مشاكل صحية خطيرة.</p>
<p><b>C- It's good for you!</b> Experts recommend a mixture of activities. These should include moderate exercise, such as fast walking, and more strenuous exercise, like running. (3) They also advise exercise that strengthens the muscles, for example sit-ups. The more muscle we build, the more calories we burn, and the fitter we become. In addition, exercise is a great way to cope with stress. In a recent study, patients who had been suffering from depression reported a great improvement after increased physical activity.</p>	<p>إنه لمن الجيد بالنسبة لك: يوصي الخبراء بالتنوع في النشاطات. ويجب أن تتضمن نشاطات متوسطة مثل المشي السريع ونشاطات أكثر إجهاد مثل الركض. وينصحون أيضاً بتمارين تقوي العضلات مثل الضغط/أو شد العضلات. حيث تبني عضلات أكثر فإنك تحرق سعرات حرارية أكثر ونصبح أكثر لياقةً. بالإضافة إلى أن الرياضة طريقة رائعة للتعامل مع الضغط والإجهاد. ففي دراسة حديثة تبين أن المرضى الذين كانوا يعانون من الإكتئاب اعربو عن تحسن عظيم بعد زيادة النشاطات الجسدية لديهم.</p>
<p><b>D- Useful tips</b></p>	<p>نصائح مفيدة: بالطبع هذا يجعلنا نتساءل كيف يمكننا أن نتدبر أمور كل هذه التمارين الإضافية؟ إن أفضل طريقة هي جعل التمارين أساسية في حياتنا اليومية بحيث نتبح روتين. وليس بالضرورة أن تأخذ وقتاً إضافياً. يمكنك النزول من الباص قبل الوصول إلى وجهتك أو تقف على قدميك وأنت</p>

Of course, this raises a question: how can I manage to fit in all this extra exercise? The best way is to build it into our daily lives so that it becomes a routine. (4) It doesn't have to take much extra time. You could get off the bus one stop earlier than usual, or stand up when you're on the phone! Most importantly, we should find a sport that we enjoy doing. That way, we will all become fitter, healthier and happier.

تتكلم في الهاتف! والأكثر أهمية أن نجد رياضة نحبها. بهذه الطريقة سنصبح كلنا لائقون جسدياً وأكثر صحةً وأكثر سعادة.

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Adult	كبير في السن	Leaving	يغادر	Lead	يقود	Addition	بالإضافة
Overweight	وزن زائد	sofa	الأريكة	Serious	بشكل جدي	Great	عظيم
Obese	بدين	Experts	خبراء	Problem	مشكلة	Cope	تغلب
Popularity	شعبية	warn	يحذر	Recommend	يوصي	Stress	توتر
Fast food	الوجبات السريعة	Trend	اتجاه	Mixture	خليط	Depression	اكتئاب
Common	شائع	Advice	ينصح	Moderate	معتدل	Reported	ابلاغ
Drive	يقود	Aim	يهدف	Strenuous	شاق	Improvement	تحسينات
Modern	حديث	Target	هدف	muscle	عضلة	Physical	فيزيائي
Screen	شاشة	Sound	صوت ( يبدو )	Calories	سعات حرارية	activity	أنشطة
Invented	يخترع	Manages	استطاع	Burn	يحرق		
Nobody	لا أحد	PE Physical Education	حصة اللياقة البدنية	Fitter	ارشق		

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربية
obese (adj) obesity (n)	extremely fat, in a way that is dangerous to your health.	السمنة المفرطة التخممة
cope with (phrasal v)	to deal successfully with, or handle, a situation.	يتكيف مع
strenuous (adj)	using or needing a lot of effort.	مجد/متعب

## QUESTIONS

## أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية

- 1- According to the article, what are the main reasons for higher rates of obesity?
- 2- What is the minimum amount of exercise recommended for someone in your age group?
- 3- Do most British people get enough exercise? Which sentence in the article tells you this?
- 4- Guess the meaning of the highlighted word "strenuous" in paragraph C. Then check in a dictionary.
- 5- The author suggests some ways of including exercise in our normal lives. Give two examples from the article.
- 6- (Critical Thinking/Brain Storming) In your opinion, Are people in Jordan overweight? Do they share the same reasons with other countries? Give examples from your own experience to explain your answers.

- 7- (Critical Thinking/Brain Storming) Paragraphs C and D: Think of some simple ways you and other people you know could increase your physical activity. Write two or three ideas.
- 8- What do the underlined pronouns and words in the text above refer to?
- 9- (Critical Thinking/Brain Storming) The article suggests getting off the bus just before you reach your final destination and walk. Do you think this is a good idea to exercise without wasting time? Write your opinion and suggest three more ways to achieve this.
- 10- Quote the sentence which indicates that you can buy things while lying on the couch?
- 11- What is the advice of experts for people? Write it down in details please.
- 12- What do girls usually refuse and what does that lead to?
- 13- Give two examples of exercise.
- 14- How can we cope with stress and depression?

## Model answers

- 1- One reason for this is the growing popularity of fast food. Another big factor is lack of exercise. Modern technology has also played its part; we spend more and more time focusing on computer screens.
- 2- The target exercise should be at least an hour a day for children and teenagers.
- 3- Recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this.
- 4- Needing or using a lot of physical or mental effort or energy. (According to CALD)
- 5- You could get off the bus one stop earlier than usual, or stand up when you're on the phone.
- 6- Yes, most of people in Jordan are overweight. They share the same reasons with other countries and they have their own reasons such as: having fatty foods and drinking fuzzy drinks.
- 7- We can walk, play football, run and go to gym.
- 8-which: fast food /its: Modern technology their :Health experts they: School children  
These activities They Experts that exercise It exercise that a sport
- 9- Getting off the bus just before you reach is a good idea but I have many other ways. For example, you can go to work walking if your work is near, or just go shopping walking also. Walking around with friends also is a great idea.
- 10- Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.
- 11- Health experts have been warning about this trend for years, and their advice is clear. Adults should aim to exercise for at least two and a half hours every week; for children and teenagers the target should be at least an hour a day.
- 12- Girls in particular often dislike PE. This can lead to serious health problems.
- 13- Moderate exercise and strenuous exercise.
- 14- We can deal with stress and depression by exercising.

**AB: p.12**

**Ex.6**

**viable / alien / conventional / sceptical / complementary**

- |                                                                                            |               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1- I don't really believe that story – I'm very .....                                      | sceptical     |
| 2- Doctors often treat infections with antibiotics; that is the ..... approach.            | conventional  |
| 3- Medicines that are not the normal, traditionally accepted treatments are known as ..... | complementary |
| 4- Another way of saying that something could be successful is to say it is .....          | viable        |
| 5 If something seems very strange, we sometimes say it is .....                            | alien         |

**AB: p.12 Ex.7**

**conventional medicine / produce antibodies / children and teenagers / better and healthier lifestyle choices / suffer from health problems / relax and get some exercise**

- 1- A good way to cope with stress is to work extra hard. No, it isn't. You should try to
- 2- Complementary medicine can be used to immunise people. No, it can't. You can immunize yourself using
- 3- Optimistic people make bad lifestyle choices. No, they don't. They make
- 4- Seeing red has positive effects on your health. No, it doesn't. You often

**Answers**

1-relax and get some exercise 2- conventional medicine 3- better and healthier lifestyle choices 4- suffer from health problems.

**SB: p.15 Ex.6**

- 1- I **didn't use to / am used to** understand English, but now I do.
- 2- My cousin has lived in Lebanon for a year. He says he **is used to / didn't use to** living there now.
- 3- My family and I **are used to / used to** go camping once a month, but we stopped doing that when we moved to the city.
- 4- Joining a gym can be very tiring at first if you **used to / aren't used to** doing much exercise.
- 5- When I was young, I **used to / am used to** go fishing

**Answers:**

1- didn't use to 2- is used to 3- used to 4- aren't used to 5- used to

**AB: p.11 Ex.3**

**be used to / use to / not be used to / used to**

- 1- We needed warm clothes when we went to London. We weren't ..... the cold weather.
- 2- My grandparents didn't ..... send emails when they were my age.
- 3- Rashed ..... go swimming every morning, but now he doesn't.
- 4- We always go to the market across the street, so we ..... eating fresh vegetables.
- 5- Please slow down. I ..... walking so fast!
- 6- When you were younger, did you ..... play in the park?

**Answers:** ..... used to 2- use to 3- used to 4- are used to 5- am not used to 6- use to.

**AB: p.11 Ex.4**

- 1- I **used to / am used to** go shopping in the local supermarket, but it closed two years ago, so now I have to drive into town to shop.
- 2- There **didn't use to / wasn't used to** be so much pollution, but these days it is a global problem.
- 3- I think television **used to / is used to be** better than it is now. Most of the programmes these days are just reality TV.
- 4- Most Jordanians **are used to / used to** the hot weather that we have in summer.
- 5- There **was used to / used to be** a lot more wild animals in the past, but they are becoming rare nowadays.
- 6- Salma has been practising the oud really hard and she **is now used to / now used to** playing it.

**Answers:** ..... used to 2- didn't use to 3- used to 4- are used to 5- used to 6- is now used to.



**AB: p.12 Ex.5**

- 1- When I was a student, I ..... (work) very hard. I ..... (get up) very early and study alone before my lectures, attend lectures all day, and then come home to study some more!
- 2- Are you ..... (live) in Jordan yet? You've only been here for two months.
- 3 When I was a child, my grandmother ..... (make) cakes for us all the time, and I liked helping her a lot.
- 4- My grandfather retired a month ago. He isn't ..... (have) nothing to do all day. He says he needs a project to concentrate on.
- 5- I just got glasses this week, and I'm not ..... (wear) them yet, so I'm still having difficulty.

**Answers:**

1- used to work - used to get up 2-used to living 3- used to make 4- used to having 5- used to wearing.

**SB: p.19 Ex.5**

- 1- A: When I saw you yesterday, you looked really tired.  
B: Yes, I ..... for half an hour. (run)
- 2- My mother lost her purse yesterday. She ..... in the market; she must have put it down somewhere and left it there. (shop)
- 3- I made my mother a cup of tea. She was hot and tired; she..... all afternoon for a special family dinner. (cook)

**Answers:**

1-B: had been running 2- had been shopping 3- had been cooking.

**SB: p.19 Ex.6**

Hind (1) **has / had** been working very hard for several weeks before she did her final exams. When the results were published, she was delighted to learn that she (2) **has / had** passed. She (3) **has/ had** done extremely well. She (4) **phoned / had phoned** her parents from the college. They (5) **were / had been** waiting for her call all morning. When she arrived home an hour later, there was a surprise for her. For several weeks, her parents (6) **planned / had been planning** a special weekend away to the Jerash Festival. They (7) **have / had** managed to make it a surprise for Hind, even though they (8) **were / had** been using the family computer to make all the arrangements! Hind was delighted. She (9) **has / had** been talking about the Jerash Festival for months; and now the whole family was going! It was a wonderful graduation present.

**Answers:** 1- had 2- had 3- had 4- phoned 5- had been 6- had been planning 7- had 8 had been 9- had been.

**SB: p.17 Ex.7 SB: p.23 Ex.9 يرجى التدرّب على شكل الكتابة الصوتية والعكس**

الكلمة	الكتابة الصوتية	الكلمة	الكتابة الصوتية	الكلمة	الكتابة الصوتية
Importance	/ɪm'pɔ:təns/	Calm	/kɑ:m/	Audience	/'ɔ:diəns/
School	/sku:l/	Outpatient	/aʊtpeɪfənt/	Healthy	/'helθi/
Exercise	/'eksəsaɪz/	Fluently	/flʊənʔli/	Carrying	/'kæriɪŋ/
Angry	/'æŋgri/	Technology	/tek'nɒlədʒi/		

# Action Pack 12

المستوى الثالث

المنهاج الجديد

الوحدة الثالثة Unit 3

Medical advances

التقدم الطبي

Teacher: Sohaib Yaser 0788650494

## Young Emirati inventor is going to travel the world

<p>Ten-year-old Adeb al-Balooshi, from Dubai, is going to travel to seven countries on a tour <u>which</u> has been organised and funded by Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad, Crown Prince of Dubai.</p>	<p>سيذهب اديب البلوشي ذا العشر سنوات من دبي في جولة الى سبع دول في جولة نظمها ومولها الشيخ حمدان بن محمد امير دبي.</p>
<p>The boy caught Sheikh Hamdan's attention with his invention – a prosthetic limb for <u>his</u> father. The Sheikh has taken a special interest in the boy, and hopes the tour that he is sponsoring for Adeb will give the young inventor more self-confidence and inspire other young Emirati inventors.</p>	<p>جذب الطفل انتباهه (اهتمام) الشيخ حمدان باختراعه وهو طرف صناعي لوالده. وقد اهتم الشيخ بالطفل ويأمل بأن هذه الرحلة التي يرهاها لأديب ستعطيه ثقة أكبر بنفسه وتلهم المخترعين الإماراتيين الآخرين.</p>
<p>Adeb got the idea for a special kind of prosthetic leg while <u>he</u> was at the beach with his family. His father, who wears an artificial leg, could not swim in the sea as he could not risk getting his leg wet. This inspired Adeb to invent a waterproof prosthetic leg.</p>	<p>خطرت فكرة القدم الصناعية لأديب بينما كان على الشاطئ مع عائلته. والده الذي يضع قدما صناعية لم يستطع السباحة في البحر لانه لا يمكنه المخاطرة بتبليل قدمه. وهذا الهم اديب ان يخترع قدما صناعية مقاومة للماء.</p>
<p>Adeb is going to visit the USA, France, the UK, Ireland, Belgium, Italy and Germany, where he will be staying with relatives. However, while he is in Germany, Adeb will not be spending all his time sightseeing. He will be working with a specialist doctor to build the appendage. He will also be attending a course on prosthetics and learning about different kinds of medical apparatus.</p>	<p>سيزور اديب الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية وفرنسا وبريطانيا و ايرلنده وبلجيكا وإيطاليا وألمانيا حيث سيبقى هناك مع اقاربه. ولكن بينما هو في ألمانيا، لن يقضي اديب وقته بالتنزه. سيعمل مع طبيب مختص لبناء النموذج الأولي. سيحضر أيضا دورة عن الأطراف الصناعية وسيتعلم عن الأدوات الطبية المختلفة.</p>
<p>Adeb has invented several other devices, including a tiny cleaning robot and a heart monitor, which is attached to a car seat belt. In the case of an emergency, rescue services and the driver's family will be automatically connected with the driver through this special checking device.</p>	<p>اخترع اديب العديد من الاجهزة الاخرى بما فيها رجل تنظيف الي مصغر وجهاز لمراقبة القلب والذي يتم توصيله لحزام الامان في السيارة، في حالات الطوارئ سيتم الاتصال تلقائنا بخدمات الإنقاذ وعائلة السائق بواسطة هذا الجهاز الفاحص.</p>
<p><u>He</u> has also invented a fireproof helmet. This special equipment, which has a built-in camera system, will help rescue workers in emergencies. It is for these reasons that Adeb rightly deserves his reputation as one of the youngest inventors in the world.</p>	<p>اخترع ايضا خوذة رأس مقاومة للحريق والتي تحتوي على جهاز تصوير (كاميرا) ستساعد عمال الإنقاذ في حالات الطوارئ. ولهذا السبب استحق اديب بجدارة سمعته كواحد من اصغر المخترعين في العالم.</p>

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Travel	يرحل	interest	اهتمام	attending	يحضر		
Countries	دول / مناطق	sponsoring	يرعى	apparatus	أدوات		
Tour	جولة سياحية	self-confidence	ثقة بالنفس	several	عديد		
Organised	تم تنظيمها	inspire	يلهم	tiny	ضئيل		
Funded	مولت	beach	شاطئ	emergency	طوارئ		

crowd	تاج	artificial	صناعي	rescue	ينقذ	
caught	حصل	risk	مخاطر	fireproof	ضد النار	
attention	انتباه	waterproof	ضد الماء	helmet	خوذة	
invention	اختراع	sightseeing	تنزه	equipment	معدات	
prosthetic	صناعي	specialist	مختص / خبير	deserves	يستحق	
limb	طرف	appendage	نموذج اولي	reputation	سمعة	

## SB: p.14

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
<b>sponsor (v) sponsor (n) sponsored (adj)</b>	<b>to financially support a person or an event.</b>	يدعم
<b>prosthetic (n)</b>	<b>an artificial body part.     prosthetics (n)</b>	بديل
<b>limb (n) limb (adj)</b>	<b>arm or leg of a person.</b>	العضو
<b>artificial (adj)</b>	<b>made or produced by human beings rather than occurring naturally.     artifice (n)     artificially (adv)</b>	صناعي
<b>appendage (n) append (v)</b>	<b>a body part, such as an arm or a leg, connected to the main trunk of the body.</b>	التوصيل
<b>apparatus (n)</b>	<b>the technical equipment or machinery needed for a particular purpose</b>	جهاز
<b>fund (v)</b>	<b>to pay for.</b>	يدعم
<b>equipment (n)</b>	<b>tools or machines that have a particular purpose.</b>	معدات

## QUESTIONS

- 1- Why was Sheikh Hamdan interested in helping Adeeb?
- 2- How did Adeeb get his inspiration for a waterproof prosthetic leg?
- 3- Who will Adeeb be staying with in Germany, and what will he be doing there?
- 4- What does the suffix -proof mean in (waterproof/fireproof)?
- 5- (Critical Thinking) What is the purpose of the in-car heart monitor? Why do you think that it is built into the seat belt?
- 6- Why did the Sheikh offer Adeeb the gift of a world tour?
- 7- How old is Adeeb?
- 8- Who is Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad?
- 9- (Think! Think! Think!) How do you think Adeeb's dad lost his leg?

- 10- Why did the father refuse to swim in the sea?
- 11- Quote the sentence which indicates that Adeeb is going to visit many countries.
- 12- Will Adeeb be spending all his time sightseeing in Germany? If not, what will he be doing?
- 13- Mention some of Adeeb's inventions.
- 14- (Brain Storming) Sponsoring inventors is a very noble matter, what do you think are the advantages of sponsoring those genius people?
- 15- (Critical Thinking) What device did Adeeb use in his fireproof helmet and what is its advantage?
- 16- What did Adeeb gain for what he did?
- 17- What do the underlined pronouns/words refer to?
18. Find the synonyms for the following words:**artificial/appendage/apparatus.**
19. Quote the sentence which indicates that Adeeb's father has got a prosthetic leg.
20. According to the text ,there are three countries that Adeeb is going to visit.Mention them.

## MODEL ANSWERS

- 1- Because the boy (Adeeb) caught Sheikh Hamdan's attention with his invention – a prosthetic limb for his father.
- 2- Adeeb got the idea for a special kind of prosthetic leg while he was at the beach with his family. His father, who wears an artificial leg, could not swim in the sea as he could not risk getting his leg wet.
- 3- He will be staying with relatives. He will be working with a specialist doctor to build the appendage. He will also be attending a course on prosthetics and learning about different kinds of medical apparatus.
- 4-to provide protection against.
- 5- It is so helpful in case of an emergency, this device will communicate with rescue services and the driver's family and inform them about the case the driver has.
- 6- The Sheikh hopes the tour that he is sponsoring for Adeeb will give the young inventor more self-confidence and inspire other young Emirati inventors.
- 7- Adeeb is ten years old.
- 8- Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammad is the Crown Prince of Dubai.
- 9- I think Adeeb's father has lost his leg in a car accident.
- 10- The father refused to swim because he could not risk getting his leg wet.
- 11- Adeeb is going to visit the USA, France, the UK, Ireland, Belgium, Italy and Germany, where he will be staying with relatives.
- 12- No, he will not. He will be working with a specialist doctor to build the appendage. He will also be attending a course on prosthetics and learning about different kinds of medical apparatus.
- 13- Adeeb has invented several devices, including a tiny cleaning robot, a heart monitor and a fireproof helmet.
- 14- Sponsoring genius people has many advantages such as: They can leave their work and work more on their ideas, they also have enough money for research.
- 15- Adeeb used a built-in camera system which will help rescue workers in emergencies.
- 16- Adeeb rightly deserved his reputation as one of the youngest inventors in the world.
- 17-

Word	Reference
which	a tour
his /his	the boy
he	The Sheikh
he/his /His	Adeeb

who/he/h is	His father
where	Germany
he/he/he	Adeeb
which	a heart monitor
He	Adeeb
which	This special equipment
his	Adeeb

18.prosthetic/limb/equipment

### In the future

<p><b>We will be able to have an operation to increase our intelligence.</b> Scientists have already developed brain implants that improve vision or allow disabled people to use their thoughts in order to control prosthetic limbs like arms, legs or hands, or operate a wheelchair. In 2012 CE, research on monkeys showed that a brain (1) implant improved their decision-making abilities. How will humans benefit from this research? Scientists hope to develop a similar device to help people who have been affected by brain damage, which could be caused by (2) dementia, a stroke or other brain injuries.</p>	<p><b>سنتمكن في المستقبل من القيام بعملية جراحية لزيادة الذكاء.</b> طور العلماء حشوات زارعات في الجسم تعمل على تحسين الرؤية أو تسمح/تمكن ذوي الإحتياجات الخاصة من استخدام افكارهم للتحكم بأطراف/اعضاء صناعية مثل الذراعين والارجل او الأيدي او لتشغيل واستخدام كرسي العجلات. اظهرت الدراسات على القرود في عام 2012 أن زراعة دماغية قد حسنت قدرات اتخاذ القرار لديهم. كيف سيستفيد البشر من هذا البحث؟ يأمل العلماء ان يطوروا اداة شبيهة لمساعدة الناس الذين اصيبوا بشلل الدماغ والذي يمكن ان يكون سببه الخلل الدماغي او السكتة الدماغية او اصابات/اضرار/امراض دماغية اخرى.</p>
<p><b>Doctors will be able to communicate with people in a coma.</b> In 2010 CE, neuroscientists confirmed that it was possible to communicate with some patients in a coma, by using a special brain (3) scanner called an MRI. They suggested that, in the future, more meaningful dialogue with patients in a coma would be possible. Two years later, it has finally happened. The scanner, used on a man who has been in a coma for more than twelve years, proves that he has a conscious, thinking mind – a fact that had previously been disputed by many. Doctors plan to use similar brain-scanning techniques in the future to find out whether patients are in pain, or what they would like to be done in order to improve their quality of life.</p>	<p><b>سيتمكن الأطباء من التواصل مع الناس المصابين بالغيوبية.</b> أكد علماء أعصاب في عام 2012 انه كان من الممكن التواصل مع بعض المرضى في غيبوبتهم باستخدام ماسح دماغي خاص يسمى ( التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي ). واقترحوا انه وفي المستقبل سيكون من الممكن عمل حوارات ذات معنى اكثر مع المرضى في حالة الغيبوبية. وحدث هذا فعلاً بعد عامين. اثبت الماسح الدماغي اذي استخدم مع مريض في غيبوبية منذ اثني عشر عاما ان لديه وعي وعقل مفكر -وهي فكرة كانت في حالة جدل بين العديدين يخطط الأطباء لإستخدام تقنية مسح دماغي مشابهة في المستقبل لمعرفة ما إذا كان المرضى يتألمون في الغيبوبية أو ماذا يرغبون أن يحدث لتحسين جودة / مستوى حياتهم.</p>
<p><b>A new drug will help to treat certain types of cancer almost instantly.</b> A new cancer drug is being trialled in Plymouth, UK, which doctors hope will extend the lives of cancer patients and reduce their symptoms overnight. It is taken as a single (4) pill every morning, and so far, patients have shown none of the usual (5) side effects such as the sickness and hair loss that are</p>	<p><b>سيساعد نوع جديد من العقار الطبي( الدواء )في علاج انواع من السرطان بشكل شبه فوري.</b> يتم تجربة دواء جديد للسرطان في بليموث، بريطانيا، والذي يأمل الأطباء انه سيمدد حياة مرضى السرطان ويقلل اعراضه بين عشية وضحاها. يؤخذ الدواء حبة منفردة كل صباح ولم يظهر على المرضى اي اعراض جانبية كالداوار و سقوط الشعر المعتاد عندما يكونون تحت انواع مختلفة من علاج السرطان. يعمل الدواء عن طريق منع بروتين معين مسؤول عن</p>

experienced when undergoing other forms of cancer treatment. The new treatment works by blocking a protein which causes cancerous cells to grow. It will improve patients' life expectancy and quality of life much more quickly than any other treatment. The patients were interviewed a year after starting the treatment and are fit and well, saying that they are definitely going to continue the trial. They have every reason to believe the new drug is going to work. Doctors at Plymouth Hospital hope that it will help patients from all over the world.

التسبب بنمو خلايا سرطانية. سيعمل على تحسين/زيادة العمر المتوقع للمرضى ونوعية حياتهم بسرعة أكثر من أي علاج آخر. تم عمل مقابلات مع المرضى بعد عام من بداية العلاج وكانوا اصحاء وجيدين. قالوا انهم سيقومون حتماً بإكمال التجربة (العلاجية). لديهم كل الأسباب لتجعلهم يؤمنون بان العلاج سيعمل. يأمل العلماء في مستشفى بليموث ان العلاج سيساعد المرضى في كل أنحاء العالم.

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Operation	عملية	neuroscientists	علماء الأعصاب	instantly	فوري		
intelligence	ذكاء	scanner	ماسح	trialled	تجربة		
implants	حشوات/زرعة	MRI Magnetic Resonance Imaging	التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي	reduce	يقلل		
vision	رؤية	dialogue	حوار	symptoms	أعراض		
abilities	قدرات	proves	يثبت	side effects	أعراض جانبية		
affected	تأثر / أصيب	conscious	وعي	blocking	يحجب		
damage	ضرر / شلل	disputed	نزاع	cancerous cells	خلايا سرطانية		
dementia	خلل دماغي	pain	ألم	expectancy	توقع		
stroke	سكتة	drug	عقار / دواء				
injuries	إصابة	treat	يعالج				
coma	غيبوبة	cancer	سرطان				

### SB: p.22

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
symptom (n)	a physical problem that might indicate a disease.	اعراض
stroke (n)	an illness when a blood tube in your brain bursts or is blocked, resulting in the brain being unable to function normally.	السكتة الدماغية
side effect (n)	effects of medicine on your body in addition to curing pain or illness.	آثار جانبية
scanner (n)	a medical instrument that uses radiography to	ماسح اشعاعي
scan (v)	produce images of the insides of the human body.	للصور الطبية
pill (n)	a small round piece of medicine to be swallowed whole.	حبة دواء
MRI (n)	(Magnetic Resonance Imaging) a scan that uses strong magnetic fields to make a picture of the inside of someone's body for medical reasons.	التصوير بالرنين المغناطيسي

medical trial (n)	trial to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of medications.	تجربة دوائية
implant (n) (v)	a piece of tissue, prosthetic device, or other object implanted in the body.	زراعة طبية
expansion (n) expand(v)	the act of making something bigger.	توسع
drug (n)	a medicine or a substance used for making medicines.	عقار/دواء
dementia (n)	a mental illness the symptoms of which are problems with memory, personality changes and problems with reasoning.	الخلل الدماغي الناتج عن تقدم العمر
coma (n)	a state of unconsciousness caused by a certain injury and that lasts for an extended period of time.	الغيبوبة
cancerous (adj)	something that has or can cause cancer. a very serious disease in which cells in the body begin to grow abnormally.	سرطاني

## QUESTIONS:

- 1- What do you think the implications will be for the world if people live longer? Should we be using technology to help us to improve life expectancy?
- 2- What are the benefits of the implants that scientists have lately developed?
- 3- The writer suggests three kinds of limbs, write down two of which.
- 4- Will it be possible to communicate with people who are in a coma? If yes, how would that be possible?
- 5- What does MRI stand for?
- 6- Write down the sentences which indicate that communicating with people who are in a coma was achieved.
- 7- What is the doctors' plan for communicating with people in a coma?
- 8- The writer talks about a type of drug for people who suffer from cancer, what does that drug do?
- 9- What do other forms of cancer treatment do when patients undergo them?
- 10- How does the new cancer treatment work?
- 11- What was the impression of those patients on the new cancer treatment and what is their opinion about it?
- 12- (Critical thinking/Brain Storming) Why do you think cancer patients agreed to undergo new types of treatments?
- 13- (Critical Thinking) What do you think will be the request of those who are in a coma if they were able to be contacted with?
- 14- What do the underlined words/pronouns refer to?



## MODEL ANSWERS

- 1- If people live longer, there will be shortage in services such as healthcare and education. We should be utilizing technology to make other life aspects easier.
- 2- They improve vision or allow disabled people to use their thoughts in order to control prosthetic limbs like arms, legs or hands, or operate a wheelchair.
- 3- arms, legs
- 4- Yes, it will be possible to communicate with people who are in a coma by using a special brain scanner called an MRI.
- 5- MRI stands for (Magnetic Resonance Imaging).
- 6- Neuroscientists confirmed that it was possible to communicate with some patients in a coma, by using a special brain (3) scanner called an MRI. They suggested that, in the future, more meaningful dialogue with patients in a coma would be possible. Two years later, it has finally happened.
- 7- Doctors plan to use similar brain-scanning techniques in the future to find out whether patients are in pain, or what they would like to be done in order to improve their quality of life.
- 8- A new cancer drug is being trialled in Plymouth, UK, which doctors hope will extend the lives of cancer patients and reduce their symptoms overnight.
- 9- Other forms of cancer treatment have side effects such as the sickness and hair loss that are experienced when undergoing usual cancer treatment.
- 10- The new treatment works by blocking a protein which causes cancerous cells to grow.
11. The patients were interviewed a year after starting the treatment and are fit and well, saying that they are definitely going to continue the trial.
- 12- I think cancer patients agree to undergo new types of treatment because they have already suffered from old treatments and they believe it might help.
- 13- I think they will want to know about their family members, they also might wish to get news about work and life.
- 14.

Word	Reference
that	brain implants
their	disabled people
their	monkeys
who	people
which	brain damage
They	neuroscientists
who/ he	a man
they/ their	patients
which	A new cancer drug
their	cancer patients
It	A new cancer drug
which	a protein
they/ They	The patients
it	A new cancer drug

## The King Hussein Cancer Center

<p>The King Hussein Cancer Center (KHCC) is Jordan's only comprehensive cancer treatment Centre. It treats both adult and paediatric patients. As the population of the country increases, more and more families will rely on the hospital for cancer treatment. Patients come not only from Jordan but also from other countries in the region, as they are attracted by its excellent reputation, lower costs, and cultural and language similarities.</p>	<p>مركز الملك الحسين للسرطان هو مركز الأردن الوحيد والشامل لعلاج السرطان. يعالج المركز المرضى البالغين والمرضى من الأطفال. ومع ازدياد عدد السكان في الدولة، سيعتمد عدد أكبر من العائلات على هذا المستشفى لعلاج السرطان. يأتي الناس ليس من الأردن فحسب، بل من بلاد أخرى من المنطقة لانهم ينجذبوا لسمعته الممتازة والتكاليف المنخفضة والتشابه الثقافي واللغوي.</p>
<p>In order to cope with the increase in demand for treatment, the KHCC has begun an expansion programme. Building started in 2011 CE. The hospital will have more than doubled its capacity by 2016 CE, increasing space for new cancer cases from 3,500 per year to 9,000.</p>	<p>وللتعامل مع زيادة الطلب على العلاج، بدأ مركز الحسين للسرطان برنامجاً للتوسع. بدأ البناء عام 2011 وبحلول عام 2016 سيكون المركز قد ضاعف قدرته الاستيعابية بزيادة المساحة لحالات مرضية جديدة من 3500 في السنة إلى 9000.</p>
<p>By then, they will have added 182 extra beds, along with bigger units for different departments, including radiotherapy. New adult and paediatric wards will have opened. Additionally, they will have built a special ten-floor outpatients' building, with an education centre <u>which</u> will include teaching rooms and a library. Many cancer patients live far away from Amman, where the KHCC is located, and the journey to and from the hospital is often difficult. For this reason, there are plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan. In the near future, King Abdullah University Hospital in Irbid hopes to set up radiotherapy machines, so that cancer patients from northern Jordan will not have to go to Amman for radiotherapy treatment.</p>	<p>عندها، سيكونون قد أضافوا 182 سرير اضافي مع وحدات إضافية لأقسام مختلفة بما فيها العلاج الإشعاعي. سيكون قد تم افتتاح أجنحة للبالغين وللأطفال. إضافة إلى مبنى مكون من عشرة طوابق للمرضى غير المقيمين ومركز تعليمي والذي سيتضمن غرف تعليمية ومكتبة. يعيش العديد من المرضى بعيداً عن عمان حيث يوجد المركز، والرحلة عاد ما تكون صعبة من وإلى المركز، لهذا السبب هناك خطط لتوسيع منشآت العناية بمرضى السرطان لتشمل مناطق أخرى من الأردن. يطمح مستشفى الملك عبدالله الجامعي في اربد في المستقبل القريب بإقامة وتشغيل وحدات العلاج الإشعاعي، لكي لا يضطر مرضى السرطان من شمالي الأردن للذهاب إلى عمان للعلاج بالإشعاع.</p>

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
comprehensive	شامل	capacity	قدرة استيعابية				
paediatric	طب الأطفال	radiotherapy	العلاج بالأشعة				
population	الكثافة السكانية	wards	جناح / قسم				
region	منطقة	Additionally	إضافة لذلك				
attracted	جذب	extend	يزيد / يمتد				
reputation	سمعة	facilities	منشأة				
cope with	تعامل مع						
demand	طلب						
expansion	توسعة						
doubled	ضعف						

**SB: p.24**

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
ward (n) (v)	a room in a hospital, especially for patients needing similar kinds of care.	جناح / قسم
radiotherapy (n)	the use of controlled amounts of radiation (a form of energy) to treat disease, especially cancer.	العلاج الإشعاعي
outpatient (n)	someone who goes to a hospital for treatment but does not stay for the night.	مريض غير مقيم
paediatric (adj) paediatrician (n)	describing the area of medicine that deals with children and their illnesses.	متعلق بطب الأطفال
reputation	fame	السمعة

**QUESTIONS:**

- 1- Why does the hospital need to expand?
- 2- Give three reasons why patients from other countries visit the centre.
- 3- What is one of the disadvantages of the KHCC for patients who live far from Amman?
- 4- What plans are there for increasing cancer care facilities in other parts of Jordan?
- 5- What does KHCC stand for?
- 6- Where do people come from in order to get medical treatment?
- 7- What is the plan to face the increase in the demand for treatment?
- 8- What does the underlined word “paediatric” mean?
- 9- What is the current capacity rate of KHCC per year?
- 10- What are the things that will be added to the hospital by 2016?
- 11- Why is it important to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan?
- 12- What are the advantages of starting a radiotherapy unit in King Abdullah University Hospital?
- 13- Where is King Abdullah University Hospital located?
- 14- What does the education centre in KHCC include?
- 15- What do the underlined and bolded words/pronouns refer to?
- 16- Quote the sentence which shows that the hospital is an attractive medical centre for many Jordanians and Arabs.
- 17- Read the quotation. “Wherever the art of Medicine is loved, there is also a love of Humanity. Hippocrates (460 BCE–370 BCE) Do you agree with it? Why/Why not?

**MODEL ANSWER**

- 1- because there is more demand for treatment.
- 2- Patients come from other countries in the region, as they are attracted by the hospital’s excellent reputation, lower costs, and cultural and language similarities.
- 3- The journey to and from the hospital is often difficult.
- 4- There are plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan. In the near future, King Abdullah University Hospital **in Irbid** hopes to set up radiotherapy machines, so that cancer patients from northern Jordan will not have to go to Amman for radiotherapy treatment.
- 5- The King Hussein Cancer Center.
- 6- People come from other countries to get medical treatment.

- 7- The KHCC has begun an expansion programme. There are other plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan.
- 8- Paediatric: describing the area of medicine that deals with children and their illnesses.
- 9- The hospital's capacity is 3,500 per year.
- 10- They will have added 182 extra beds, along with bigger units for different departments, including radiotherapy. New adult and paediatric wards will have opened. Additionally, they will have built a special ten-floor outpatients' building.
- 11- Many cancer patients live far away from Amman, where the KHCC is located, and the journey to and from the hospital is often difficult. For this reason, there are plans to extend cancer care facilities to other parts of Jordan.
- 12- Cancer patients from northern Jordan will not have to go to Amman for radiotherapy treatment.
- 13- King Abdullah University Hospital is located in Irbid.
- 14- The education centre includes teaching rooms and a library.
- 15.

Word	Reference
it	The King Hussein Cancer Center
they	Patients
its	The hospital
which	an education centre
where	far away from Amman

- 16- Patients come not only from Jordan but also from other countries in the region.
- 17- Yes, I agree with this quotation because doctors depend on love to strengthen their relationships with their patients and that is so helpful in curing diseases.

### **Accident Victim Tests First Artificial Limb**

Scientists have successfully invented a prosthetic hand with a sense of touch. It is an exciting new invention, which they plan to develop. It is possible that, in the not-too-distant future, similar artificial arms and legs will have taken the place of today's prosthetic limbs.	ابتكر العلماء بنجاح يد آلية يمكنها الإحساس. إنها اختراع جديد مثير للحماسة والذي يسعى العلماء لتطويره. من المحتمل في المستقبل غير البعيد ستحل أذرع وأقدام صناعية محل الأطراف الصناعية الحالية.
Dennis Sorensen, a 39-year-old from Denmark, was the first person to try out the new invention. After losing his left hand in an accident, he had been using a standard prosthetic hand for nine years. The new hand, which was developed by Swiss and Italian scientists, was a huge improvement. With it, Sorensen could not only pick up and manipulate objects, but he could also feel them. 'When I held an object, I could feel if it was soft or hard, round or square,' he explained. He said that the sensations were almost the same as the ones he felt with his other hand.	كان دينيس سورينسن البالغ من العمر 39 من الدنمارك أول شخص جرب هذا الاختراع. كان يستخدم يد صناعية عادية بعدما فقد يده اليسرى في حادث لمدة تسع سنوات. كانت اليد التي طورها علماء سويسريون واطالبيون تحسينا ضخما. لا يستطيع سيرنسون التقاط الأشياء وتعديلها بها فحسب، بل يستطيع أيضا الإحساس بهم. أوضح أنه عندما يمسك جسما، يستطيع أن يحس ما إذا كان ناعما أو قاس (خشنا)، مربع أو مستدير. وقال إن الإحساس كان تقريبا كالإحساس الذي شعر به باليد الثانية.
Unfortunately, Sorensen was only taking part in trials, and the equipment is not ready for general use yet. He was only allowed to wear it for a month, for safety reasons. So now he has his old artificial hand back. However, he hopes that soon he will be wearing the new type of hand again. He is looking forward to the time when similar artificial limbs are available for the thousands of people who need them. He will have helped to transform their lives.	لسوء الحظ، كان سورينسن يشارك في تجارب والأداة لم تكن جاهزة للاستخدام بعد. سمح له بارتدائها لمدة شهر فقط لأسباب تتعلق السلامة. وبذلك فقد استرجع يده الصناعية الآن. على أية حال هو يأمل بأن يرتدي هذا النوع الجديد من الأيدي قريبا. ويتطلع بشوق للوقت الذي ستكون فيه أطرافا مشابهة متاحة لآلاف الناس الذين يحتاجونها. سيكون بذلك قد شارك بتغيير مجرى حياتهم.

**Words must be saved****كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً**

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
not-too-distant	ليس ببعيد						
invention	اختراع						
standard	عادي						
manipulate	تلاعب / تحريك						
sensations	الإحساس						
transform	يشكل / يغير						

**AB: p.17**

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربي
<b>bionic (adj)</b>	<b>describing a limb or body part that is electronically or mechanically powered.</b>	ذو أعضاء آلية
<b>cross (adj)</b>	<b>angry or annoyed.</b>	غاضب/منزعج
<b>publicise (v) publicity (n)</b>	<b>to give information about something to the public, so that they know about it.</b>	يجعل معروفاً بنشر
<b>career (n)</b>	<b>a job undertaken for a significant period of a person's life and with opportunities for progress.</b>	وظيفة

**QUESTIONS:**

- 1- Who invented the new prosthetic hand? What is special about it?
- 2- Why does Dennis Sorensen need a prosthetic hand?
- 3- Which hand is he wearing now? Why?
- 4- What do the bolded and underlined pronouns refer to?
- 5- Find a word that is the opposite of 'natural' in the first and third paragraphs.
- 6- What is special about the new artificial hand they are talking about?
- 7- Quote the sentence which indicates personal information about the man under the testing process.
- 8- How long has Sorensen been using an artificial hand?
- 9- What do the underlined/bolded words and pronouns refer to?
- 10- What could Sorensen do with the new hand?
- 11- Why can't Sorensen wear his new hand now?
- 12- Critical Thinking: If you were in Sorensen's place (god forbid), would you agree to undergo this kind of test? Why? Why not?

**MODEL ANSWERS**

- 1- Swiss and Italian scientists :it allows the wearer to feel objects.
- 2- Dennis needs that new hand because he had lost his left hand.
- 3- He is using his old one because the new is not ready for general use yet.

4-

Word	Reference
it\which	a prosthetic hand
they	scientists
he	Dennis Sorensen
which\it	the new hand
he	Sorensen
them	objects
I\he\his\he	Sorensen
it	the equipment
he\his\he\he\He	Sorensen
who\them\their	thousands of people

5- artificial.

6- The new artificial hand has a sense of touch.

7- Dennis Sorensen, a 39-year-old from Denmark, was the first person to try out the new invention.

8- He had been using a standard prosthetic hand for nine years.

10- Sorensen could pick up and manipulate objects, he could also feel them.

11- HE could not use it forever because he was only taking part in trials, and the equipment is not ready for general use yet.

12- I would easily agree to go through such an experiment because I have nothing to lose. I will also be helping others by tying this artificial arm.

### SB: p.23 Ex.5

Examples:

Answers:

- I hope to go to Australia next year.

- I plan to learn French soon.

- I intend to go shopping at the weekend.

1. He / hope / become a teacher one day.

2. I / intend / apply for a job when I finish university.

3. Many hospitals / plan / use robots to help nurses in the future.

4. How / you / intend / solve the problem?

5. Our school / hope / raise enough money to build a new library.

6. You /intend / buy tickets for the play?

Answers:

1. He hopes to become a teacher one day.

3. Many hospitals plan to use robots to help nurses in the future.

5. Our school hopes to raise enough money to build a new library.

2. I intend to apply for a job when I finish university.

4. How do you intend to solve the problem?

6. Do you intend to buy tickets for the play?

### AB: p.15 Ex.1

(Similar meanings)

**Apparatus / artificial / equipment / fund / prosthetic / sponsor**

1. Describes an object that is manufactured by humans. .... / .....

2. Tools or machines that have a particular purpose. .... / .....

3. To pay for . .... / .....

**Answers** 1. artificial / prosthetic 2. equipment / Apparatus 3. sponsor / fund

**AB: p.15 Ex.2**

**(Collocations)**

1. **catch** / take someone's attention.
2. **get** / catch an idea.
3. **take** / get an interest in something/somebody.
4. **spend** / do time doing something.
5. make / **attend** a course.

**AB: p.15 Ex.3**

**Helmet / inspire / monitor / reputation / risk / seat built / self-confidence / tiny / waterproof**

1. You can wear your watch when you go swimming if it's .....
2. It's amazing how huge trees grow from seeds .....
3. The Olympic Games often ..... young people to take up a sport.
4. Please hurry up.Let's ..... not missing the bus.
5. You must always wear a ..... in the car, whether you are the driver or a passenger.
6. When my grandfather had a heart attack,the doctors attached a special ..... to the chest.
7. It's important to encourage young people and help them develop .....
8. Petra has a ..... as a fascinating place to visit.

**Answers**      waterproof 2. tiny 3. inspire 4. risk 5. seat built 6. monitor 7. self-confidence 8. Reputation

**AB: p.16 Ex.5**

**Replace the words and phrases in bold with words from the box. One word is not needed (a coma, dementia, medical trials, pills, symptoms)**

1. Doctors look at the **signs of illness** before they decide how to treat the patient.
2. Before doctors prescribe drugs to patients, scientists perform **special tests** to make sure the drugs are safe.
3. After Ali's accident, he lay in **an unconscious state** for two weeks
4. My grandfather has to take a lot of medicine – he takes sex different **tablets** every day.

**Answers:**      1. symptoms 2.medical trials 3.a coma 4.pills

**Future continuous**

**SB: p.21 Ex.5**

- 1 A: can I call you tonight after 6 p.m., or \_\_\_\_\_ (you have) dinner with your family then?  
 2 B: no, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) dinner at that time. I \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) the news. My mum \_\_\_\_\_ (prepare) dinner, because we usually eat at about 7 p.m.  
 3 A: what do you think \_\_\_\_\_ (you do) in two years' time? \_\_\_\_\_ (you work), or \_\_\_\_\_ (you do)a university degree?  
 4 B: I certainly \_\_\_\_\_ (not work) because I want to do a degree in medicine. It's a very long course, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (still study) in seven years' time!

**Answers:**

1. will you be having
2. will not be having/ will be watching/ will be preparing
3. you will be doing/ will you be working/ will you be doing
4. will not; won't be working/ will still be studying.

**SB: p.21 Ex.6**

1. If you need to contact me next week, we'll **stay / be staying** at a hotel in Aqaba.
2. If you need help to find a job, I **will help / be helping** you.
3. I can't call my dad right now. He'll **board / be boarding** the plane. It takes off in an hour.
4. We won't be home tomorrow night. We'll **watch / be watching** the football match at the stadium.
5. Do you think you'll **miss / be missing** your school friends when you go to university?

**Answers:**

1. be staying
2. help
3. be boarding
4. be watching
5. miss

**AB: p.16 Ex.4**

**(Mistakes)**

1 A: what do you think you will be doing in two years' time?

B: I think I will be living in karak and I will study Geography.

2 A: don't phone me at seven. I'll have dinner with my family.

B: ok, I'll phone at nine.

3 A: what time will you get here tomorrow?

B: at about three, I think. I'll be texting you the exact time later.

4. A: please be quiet when you come home tonight. The baby will sleep.

B: don't worry. I won't forget.

**Answers:** 1. Will be studying 2. Will be having 3. Will text 4. Will be sleeping

**The Perfect Future**

**SB: p.25 Ex.5**

1. This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we \_\_\_\_\_ our exams. (finish)
2. This time next month, my parents \_\_\_\_\_ married for twenty years. (be)
3. The books that you ordered \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of the week (not arrive)
4. By the next year, \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ England? (visit)

**Answers:** 1. will have finished 2. will have been 3. will not have arrived 4. Will, have visited

**AB: p.17 Ex.11**

**Complete the sentences in the future perfect or the future continuous.**

1. Next month, we / live / in this house for a year. Let's celebrate! \_\_\_\_\_
2. Next Monday, I / work / in my new job. \_\_\_\_\_
3. You / do / all your homework by eight o'clock? \_\_\_\_\_
4. It's three o'clock now, so Miriam's flight / arrive / at Queen Alia International Airport. \_\_\_\_\_



5. You / meet us / at the library this afternoon? \_\_\_\_\_

6. You can borrow this book tomorrow. I / finish / it by then. \_\_\_\_\_

**Answers:**

1. Next month, we will have lived in this house for a year. Let's celebrate!
2. Next Monday, I will be working in my new job.
3. Will you have done all your homework by eight o'clock?
4. It's three o'clock now, so Miriam's flight will have arrived at Queen Alia International Airport.
5. Will you be meeting us at the library this afternoon?
6. You can borrow this book tomorrow. I'll have finished it by then.

**AB:16 Ex.7**

1. is going to take 2. will stay 3. will have 4. is going to miss  
5. is going to do 6. will tell

## Writing:

**1- Guided Writing (Editing):**

**SB: p.25 Ex.7**

**Edit the following text. There are two grammar mistakes and three spelling mistakes. Find and correct them.**

In the near future, a new 'bionic eye' will have helped people with failing eyesite to see again. A devise inside the eye picks up an image from a small camera attached to a pair of sunglasses and send it to the brian, which interprets it as vision.

**Answers:**

1. will help 2. eyesight 3. device 4. sends 5. brain

**2- Descriptive Essay: المقالة الوصفية**

**-Introduction and personal viewpoint. – Simile.**

**-More detailed descriptions**

**-Conclusion and personal viewpoint – Language for prediction.**

### **Worldwide transport in the future**

It is of course difficult to say exactly what transportation will look like in the future, because of the infrastructural changes that are happening constantly at the moment. To me, it seems that transport may well have changed a lot in one hundred years' time. Perhaps there will be no more private transport by 2115 CE. It is possible that public transport will have improved so much that no one will need their own cars. We might all be zooming around in ecologically-sound electric buses and trams that will take us to our destinations smoothly! In order to get to other countries, we will be taking airships, which will be like aeroplanes but with more facilities available. It will be possible to travel to the other side of the world in much less time, because these airships will race around at a far greater velocity. Finally, modes of transport are always changing, depending on many different factors, but one thing is certain; we will still be travelling the whole world! We might even be able to experience weightlessness by travelling to space!

## Writing skills: Using rhetorical devices

### **Simile:**

*Some robots will look and sound very like humans, because technology will have advanced a great deal.*

*Treatment and medicines will taste as delicious as real food.*

### **Metaphor:**

*The world will be at your fingertips.*

### **Onomatopoeia:**

*Everywhere we go we will hear the constant buzz and hum of technology.*

### **Personification:**

*Our computers and mobile phones will take care of us, by telling us when to wake up, eat and sleep.*



# Action Pack 12

المستوى الثالث

المنهاج الجديد

الوحدة الرابعة 4 Unit

Success Stories

قصص نجاح

Teacher: Sohaib Yaser 0788650494

## The importance of Islamic achievements in history:

<p><b>Jabir ibn Hayyan (born 722 CE, died 815 CE)</b> The Arab world has many famous chemists in its history, but the person who is known as the founder of chemistry is probably Jabir ibn Hayyan. He is most well-known for the beginning of the production of sulphuric acid. He also built a set of scales which changed the way in <u>which</u> chemists weighed items in a laboratory: his scales could weigh items over 6,000 times smaller than a kilogram.</p>	<p>جابر ابن حيان: يمتلك العالم العربي العديد من الكيميائيين المشهورين في تاريخه، ولكن جابر بن حيان هو الشخص المتوقع والمعروف بأنه مؤسس علم الكيمياء. إنه الشخص المعروف جيداً بأنه قد بدأ بإنتاج حامض الكبريتيك. وهو الذي بنى مجموعة مقاييس غيرت الطريقة التي يزن بها الكيميائيون المواد في المختبر: يستطيع مقياسه ان يزن اجساما اقل من الكيلوغرام ب 6000 مره.</p>
<p><b>Ali ibn Nafi' (Ziryab) (born 789 CE, died 857 CE)</b> Ali ibn Nafi' is also known as 'Ziryab' (or 'Blackbird', because of his beautiful voice). He was a gifted pupil of a famous musician from Baghdad, and it was his talent for music that led him to Cordoba in the ninth century CE. He was the guest of the Umayyad ruler there. He is the person who established the first music school in the world in Cordoba, Al-Andalus, teaching musical harmony and composition. He revolutionised musical theory, and is also the person who introduced the oud to Europe.</p>	<p>علي بن نافع (زرياب): علي بن نافع معروف ايضا بزرياب او الطائر الأسود بسبب صوته الجميل. لقد كان طالبا موهوبا عند موسيقي من بغداد، ولقد قادته موهبته الموسيقية إلى قرطبة في القرن التاسع. لقد كان ضيف الحاكم الأموي هناك. وهو الشخص الذي اسس اول مدرسة موسيقية في العالم في قرطبة، الأندلس، يُدرس التناغم الموسيقي وتأليف الموسيقى. لقد احدث تغييراً جذرياً في النظرية الموسيقية وهو الشخص الذي ادخل العود لأوروبا.</p>
<p><b>Fatima al-Fihri (born early 9th century, died 880 CE)</b> Fatima al-Fihri was the daughter of a wealthy businessman. She used her father's inheritance to build a learning centre in Fez, Morocco. This learning centre became Morocco's top university, and it is where many students from all over the world come to study. Moreover, it was Fatima's sister, Mariam, who supervised the building of the Andalus Mosque, which was not far from the learning centre.</p>	<p>فاطمة الفهري هي ابنة رجل اعمال ثري. استخدمت ميراث والدها لبناء مركز تعليمي في فز-المغرب. هذا المركز التعليمي اصبح الجامعة الأولى في المغرب حيث يتهافت الكثير من الطلاب للدراسة فيها من مختلف انحاء العالم. وعلاوة على ذلك فقد اشرفت اختها مريم على بناء مسجد الأندلس والذي لم يكن بعيداً عن مركز التعلم هذا.</p>
<p><b>Al-Kindi (born around 801 CE, died 873 CE)</b> Al-Kindi was a physician, philosopher, mathematician, chemist, musician and astronomer – a true polymath. He made ground-breaking discoveries in many of these fields, but it is probably his work in arithmetic and geometry that has made him most famous.</p>	<p>الكندي: كان الكندي طبيباً وفيلسوفاً وعالم رياضيات وكيميائياً وموسيقاراً وعالماً في الفلك. لقد كان متعدد المعرفة بحق. لقد احرز اكتشافات وسعت الافاق في اغلب هذه المجالات. ولكن عمله في علم الحساب والهندسة جعله مشهوراً جداً.</p>

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
chemists	كيميائي	Blackbird	الطائر الأسود	ruler	حاكم	supervised	أشرف يشرف
founder	مؤسس	voice	صوت	established	أسس	astronomer	عالم فلك
sulphuric	الكبريت	gifted	موهوب	harmony	تناغم	polymath	متعدد المعرفة
acid	حمض	pupil	طالب	composition	تأليف		
scales	مقاييس	musician	موسيقي	revolutionised	تغيير جذري		
weighed	يزن ( وزن )	talent	موهبة	wealthy	غني		
laboratory	مختبر	guest	ضيف	inheritance	ميراث		

**SB: p.28**

Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
arithmetic (n)	the branch of mathematics concerned with numerical calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division	علم الحساب
geometry (n)	the branch of mathematics concerned with the properties, relationships and measurement of points, lines, curves and surfaces	علم الهندسة
mathematician	a person who studies Mathematics to a very complex level	مختص بالرياضيات
philosopher(n)	someone who studies and writes philosophy professionally, or an undergraduate student of Philosophy	فيلسوف
physician (n)	someone qualified to practise medicine, especially one who specialises in diagnosis and treatment	طبيب
polymath (n)	someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects	شخص موسوعي
talent	special ability	موهبة
founder	the person who starts something new	مؤسس
sacle	an instrument to measure weight	ميزان
laboratory	A room for scientific experiments	مختبر

**QUESTIONS**

1. Quote the sentence which indicates that an Arab musician introduced the oud to Europe.
- 2- Do you think that it was easier or more difficult in those days to reach such high levels of achievement in comparison with the present day? Give a reason for your opinion.
- 3- Who is probably the founder of chemistry?
- 4- What was Al-Kindi?
- 5- What is Jabir ibn Hayyan famous for?
- 6- What does the bolded pronoun “which” in the first paragraph refer to?
- 7- Who supervised the building of the Andalus Mosque?
- 8- What is the noble thing that Fatima al-Fihri did?
- 9- What made Al-Kindi most famous?
- 10- What does the underlined/bolded word “mosque” mean?
- 11- Why was Ali ibn Nafi’ called “Ziryab (or ‘Blackbird’)”?
- 12- (Critical Thinking) Arab scholars have made a tremendous contribution to the world. Suggest two other discoveries that was made by other Arab or Muslim scientists, use your research engine to find some of these.
- 13- Which successful person has influenced you the most in your life and why?

14- Which person in the previous text do you think was the most successful and why?

15- Do you think that there is anything positive to be done by you to make you famous and influence the world? What would it be?

## Model Answers

1. Jabir Ibn Hayyan had many of the most important achievements. Write down these achievements.

A. Founder of chemistry      B. The production of sulphuric acid.      C. He built a set of scales.

2. Jabir Ibn Hayyan built a set of scales which changed the way in which chemists weighed items in laboratory. In what way it helped them.

His scales could weigh items over 6,000 times smaller than a kilogram.

3. Why was Ali Ibn Nafi" called the „blackbird“?

Because of his beautiful voice.

4. Ali Ibn Nafi" had many of the most important achievements. Write down these achievements.

A. He established the first music school in the world in Cordoba.      B. He introduced the oud to Europe.

5. How did Fatima al-Fihri use her father"s inheritance?

She used her father"s inheritance to build a learning centre in Fez, Morocco.

6. What is AL-Kindi famous for?

His work in arithmetic and geometry.

7. According to the article, al-Kindi was a polymath in many fields. Write down these fields.

Al-Kindi was a physician, philosopher, mathematician, chemist, musician and astronomer.

## Masdar City – a positive step?2016\2015 و زاري

Megaprojects are extremely large investment projects, which are designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities. Although megaprojects vary in terms of size and cost, they are all, by definition, expensive, public projects that attract a high level of interest and media coverage. Projects range from motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges, etc. to entire city complexes.	هذه المشاريع العملاقة هي استثمارات كبيرة جداً والتي تم تصميمها لتشجيع النمو الاقتصادي وجلب فوائد جديدة للمدن. وبالرغم ان هذه المشاريع العملاقة تختلف من حيث الحجم والتكلفة، لكنها كلها مشاريع عامة مكلفة تجلب الاهتمام والتغطية الاعلامية. تتراوح المشاريع من طرق ومطارات و محطات وأنفاق و جسور الخ. إلى مجمعات سكنية على مستوى المدينة.
The concept of a megaproject is always based on the benefits it brings to a community. However, many megaprojects have been criticised because of <b>their</b> negative effects on a community or the environment. This essay will look at these issues with regard to Masdar City, a megaproject in Abu Dhabi.	يعتمد مبدأ المشاريع العملاقة على المنافع التي سيجلبها لمجتمع ما. ولكن الكثير منها تم انتقاده بسبب تأثيراتها السلبية على المجتمع او على البيئة. ستمعن هذه المقالة النظر في هذه الامور من حيث تناولها مدينة مصدر-مدينة في ابو ظبي.
Masdar City, which began its development in 2006 CE, will be the world's first carbon-neutral, zero waste artificially-created city. Covering an area of six square kilometres, when it is completed in 2025 CE, it is expected to house more than 40,000 residents, 50,000 commuters, and 1,500 businesses involved in mainly environmentally-friendly products.	ستكون مدينة مصدر والتي بدأ تطويرها عام 2006 اول مدينة تم صنعها لتكون خالية من الكربون ومنعدمة النفايات. مغطيه ما مساحته ست كيلو مترات مربعة وعندما يتم إكمالها في عام 2025 ، من المتوقع ان تحوي اكثر من 40.000 ساكن و 50.000 عابر و 1500 شركة تعمل في منتجات صديقة للبيئة.
The city will run entirely on renewable energy sources. It is built on an advanced energy grid which monitors exactly how much electricity is being used by every outlet in the complex. Furthermore, in order to reduce its carbon footprint, Masdar City will be a car-free zone, designed to be pedestrian and cycle-friendly. Electric, driverless cars will operate as public transport vehicles, and the city will be connected to other locations by a network of roads and railways.	ستعمل المدينة بشكل كامل على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة. فهي مبنية على شبكة طاقة متقدمة والتي تراقب كمية الطاقة المستخدمة بالضبط من قبل كل قابس في المجمع السكني. وللتقليل من الانبعاث الكربوني، ستكون مدينة مصدر خالية من السيارات مصممة للمشاة وتشجع ركوب الدراجات. ستعمل المركبات الكهربائية التي تعمل بدون سائق كمركبات للنقل العام وستكون المدينة متصلة بمواقع اخرى عن طريق سلسلة من الطرق والسكك الحديدية.

Energy will be provided by solar power and wind farms, and there are also plans to build the world's largest hydrogen plant. A desalination plant will be used to provide the city's water, with 80% of water used being recycled. Biological waste will be used as an energy source too, and industrial waste will be recycled.	سيتم تزويد بالطاقة بواسطة الطاقة الشمسية ومزارع المراوح الهوائية، وهناك ايضا خطط لبناء أكبر مصنع للهيدروجين في العالم. سيتم تزويد المدينة بالماء عن طريق محطة لتحلية المياه، وسيتم تدوير 80 % من هذه المياه. سيتم استخدام النفايات الحيوية (البيولوجية) كمصدر للطاقة ايضا. وسيتم تدوير النفايات الصناعية.
The current residents of Masdar City are all students at the Masdar Institute of Science and Technology, a university whose students are fully committed to finding solutions to the world's energy problems.	سكان مدينة مصدر الحاليون هم كلهم طلاب في مؤسسة مصدر للعلوم والتكنولوجيا، جامعة طلابها ملتزمون تماما بإيجاد حلول لمشاكل العالم المتعلقة بالطاقة.
While the project has the support of many global, environmental and conservation organisations, there is some criticism of it. It is felt that, instead of building an artificial sustainable city, sustainability should be made a priority of existing cities.	يحظى المشروع بدعم العديد من المنظمات العالمية البيئية منها والمحافظة، لكن هناك بعض الانتقادات له. يشعر الناس انه وبدلا من القيام بإنشاء مدينة صناعية مستدامة، يجب ان تكون الاستدامة اولوية للمدن الموجودة.
In conclusion, the benefits of Masdar City for the community and the environment greatly <b>outweigh</b> any disadvantages. If the aims of the developers are realised, Masdar City will be a blueprint for future urban planning that will inspire similar megaprojects in other countries.	وفي الختام، تغلب المنفعة الخاصة بمدينة مصدر للمجتمع والبيئة اي مساوي. إذا تم ادراك وتحقيق اهداف المطورين لهذه المدينة، ستكون بمثابة مخطط للتخطيط الحضري المستقبلي وستلهم مشاريع ضخمة اخرى في دول اخرى.

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Megaprojects	مشاريع عملاقة	Solar power	الطاقة الشمسية		priority	أولوية	
investment	استثمار	desalination	محطة فلترة المياه		blueprint	مخطط	
encourage	يشجع	industrial	صناعي				
vary	تختلف						
expensive	غالي						

### SB: p.32

Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
recycle	Reuse	يعيد تكرار

## QUESTIONS

1. What are megaprojects and why do they exist? What are –in your opinion- the advantages and disadvantages of such projects to people and the environment?
- 2- According to the text, especially the first paragraph, why are megaprojects designed? .....
- 3- Why are many megaprojects criticised?
- 4- How will Masdar city reduce its carbon footprint?

- 5- What does the underlined/bolded phrase “Biological waste” mean?
- 6- What will happen if the aims of the developers are realized?
- 7- Critical Thinking: What do you think is the aim of building such cities? Suggest three specific benefits of such cities.
- 8- What do “hydrogen plants” do?
- 9- Do you wish to live in Masdar City? Why? Why not?
- 10- What is the size of this project and how many people will it house?
- 11- What examples of megaprojects are provided in the essay?
- 12- What are the advantages of the creation of Masdar City? What are the disadvantages?
- 13- Do you think that Masdar City is a beneficial project or not? Give your reasons.
- 14- Do you think that a similar project to Masdar City would be successful in Jordan? What advantages and disadvantages can you think of?

## Model answers

1. What examples of megaprojects are provided in the essay?

Examples of projects include motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges, etc. to entire city complexes.

2. What are the advantages of the creation of Masdar city? What are the disadvantages?

The advantages include the fact that it will be the world’s first carbon-neutral, zero-waste city. Although there will be excellent public transport. The disadvantage is that many people think the money should have been spent on cleaning up existing places and making them more sustainable.

3. Do you think that Masdar City is a beneficial project or not? Give your reasons.

Yes, I think that Masdar city is designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to community.

4. What are the advantages and disadvantages of megaprojects to people and the environment?

The advantages include installing the latest technology that helps cities to become environmentally friendly. However, disadvantages are that they are all brand new and some people think it would be better to spend the money on regenerating old towns.

5. According to the essay, megaprojects are extremely large investment projects, which are designed for two purposes. Write these two purposes down.

A. Megaprojects are designed to encourage economic growth.

B. Bring new benefits to community.

6. According to the essay, what is the concept of a megaproject?

The concept of a megaproject is always based on the benefits it brings to a community.

7. According to the essay, many megaprojects have been criticised for many reasons. Mention them.

Because of their negative effects on a community or the environment.

8. According to the essay, there are many things that will make Masdar city environmentally-friendly city.

A. it will be the world’s first carbon-neutral.

B. it will be the world’s first zero-waste artificially-created city.

C. it will run entirely on renewable energy sources.

D. it will be a car-free zone.

E. biological waste will be used as an energy source.

9. According to the essay, Masdar city will rely on some of the renewable sources of energy. Write don them.      Solar energy and wind farms.

10. Quite the sentence which indicates that Masdar City supported by global institutions.

While the project has the support of many global, environmental and conservation organisations.

11. Find a word in the text which means “The process of removing salt from sea water”.

Desalination

12. Although the project of Masdar city has the support of many global organisations, there is some criticism of it. Give the reason. It is felt that, instead of building an artificial sustainable city, sustainability should be made a priority of existing cities.



## A founding father of farming

<p>Ibn Bassal was a writer, a scientist and an engineer who lived in Al-Andalus in the eleventh century CE. He worked in the court of Al-Ma'mun, (1) who was the king of Toledo. His great passions were botany, (2) which is the study of plants, and agriculture. Although he was a great scholar, he was also a practical man and all of his writing came from his own 'hands-on' experience of working the land.</p>	<p>كان ابن البصال كاتباً عالمًا ومهندساً عاش في الأندلس في القرن الحادي عشر للميلاد. لقد عمل في بلاط المأمون والذي كان ملك توليدو. كان كل شغفه دراسة علم النبات والزراعة. بالرغم من كونه عالماً عظيماً فقد كان رجلاً عملياً وقد اتت كل كتاباته من خبرته العملية في العمل في الأرض.</p>
<p>One of the many things which Ibn Bassal achieved was A Book of Agriculture. The book consisted of sixteen chapters which explain how best to grow trees, fruit and vegetables, as well as herbs and sweet-smelling flowers; perhaps the most famous chapter of all was the one (3) that described how to treat different types of soil. Ibn Bassal also worked out how to irrigate the land by finding underground water and digging wells. He designed water pumps and irrigation systems. All of these things were passed on through his writing.</p>	<p>كان كتاب الزراعة احد الأشياء التي حققها ابن البصال. يتكون الكتاب من ست عشرة فصل والتي تشرح كيفية زراعة الأشجار والفواكه والخضروات والاعشاب والازهار ذات الرائحة الجميلة بالطريقة الفضلى. ربما كان الفصل الأفضل هو الفصل الذي يشرح كيفية التعامل مع الانواع المختلفة من التربة. وقد بحث ابن البصال كيفية ري الارض عن طريق ايجاد المياه الجوفية وحفر الآبار. لقد صمم مضخات للمياه وانظمة ري. لقد مرر هذه الاشياء الينا عن طريق كتاباته.</p>
<p>The influence of Ibn Bassal's book was enormous. As farmers down the generations followed his instructions and advice, the land became wonderfully fertile and produced more than enough food for the fast-growing population. The irrigation systems (4) that he and his followers put in place are still in evidence in Spain. Although his name is not widely known, Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world has been great.</p>	<p>كان تأثير كتاب ابن البصال عظيماً. كما قد تبع المزارعون وعبر تواتر الاجيال تعليماته ونصائحه، فقد اصبحت الأرض خصبة بشكل مذهل وانتجت غذاء أكثر من اللازم لعدد السكان الآخذ بالتزايد. أنظمة الري التي نفذها وأصدقائه لا تزال حاضرة في اسبانيا. لقد كان ارث ابن البصال للعالم عظيماً بالرغم من ان اسمه ليس بمعروف بشكل واسع.</p>

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
passions	شغف	digging	يحفر				
botany	علم النباتات	pumps	مضخة				
agriculture	الزراعة	fertile	خصبة				
scholar	عالماً	legacy	إرث				
herbs	أعشاب						
soil	التربة						
irrigate	ري						

### AB: p.22

Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
irrigate	to supply land with water	يروي الارض
fertile land	produce more than enough food	ارض خصبة

hand on	Filed working,working by hand	عمل يدوي
legacy	What someone leaves to the world after their death	تركة

## QUESTIONS

1. Name two of Ibn Bassal's achievements.
- 2- Find a verb in the second paragraph that means 'supply land with water'.
- 3- Guess the meaning of 'fertile land' in the third paragraph. Which part of the text illustrates its meaning?
- 4- Guess the meaning of 'legacy' in the third paragraph. What does the author suggest is Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world?
- 5- Which paragraph suggests that Ibn Bassal was a polymath? Give examples of his areas of knowledge.
- 6- Why do you think the area around Toledo had a 'fast-growing population'?
- 7- What does the book explain?
- 8- What did Ibn Bassal design and how was that helpful?
- 9- Quote the sentences which indicate that people overtime had followed Ibn Bassal's inventions.

## Model answers

1. Name two of Ibn Bassal's achievements.  
Writing A Book of Agriculture; Designing water pumps and irrigation systems.
2. Find a verb in the second paragraph that means „supply land with water“. Irrigate.
3. Guess the meaning of „fertile land“ in the third paragraph. Which part of the text illustrates its meaning?  
Agriculturally productive; produced more than enough food
4. Guess the meaning of „legacy“ in the third paragraph. What does the author suggest is Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world?  
'Legacy' means what someone leaves to the world after their death. Ibn Bassal's legacy is his agricultural instructions and advice.
5. Which paragraph suggests that Ibn Bassal was a polymath? Give examples of his areas of knowledge.  
The first paragraph: writing, science, engineering, botany, agriculture.
6. Why do you think the area around Toledo had a „fast-growing population“?  
Because the area was producing a lot of food as a result of Ibn Bassal's irrigation systems.
7. According to the article. Where did Ibn Bassal get his knowledge?  
From his own 'hand-on' experience of working the land.
8. What does the most famous chapter in 'book of agriculture' illustrate?  
That described how to treat different types of soil.
9. According to the article, Ibn Bassal worked out how to irrigate the land, How did he do that? And what did he design?  
By finding underground water and digging wells. He designed water pumps and irrigation systems.

## SB: p.33 Ex.4+5

1. Urban planning 2.Public transport 3.Biological waste 4.Carbon footprint 5.Negative effect 6.Economic growth.

**SB: p.33 Ex. 5****Complete the sentences with the correct collections.**

1. When people talk about \_\_\_\_\_, they can mean either an improvement in the average standard of living, or an increase in the value of a country's products.
2. Pollution has some serious \_\_\_\_\_ on the environment, such as the death of wildlife and plant life.
3. We can all work hard to reduce our \_\_\_\_\_ by living a more environmentally-friendly lifestyle.
4. If we take \_\_\_\_\_ more often, there will be fewer cars on the roads, which will result in cleaner air in our cities.
5. Hospitals need to dispose of a lot of \_\_\_\_\_, and it should be carefully managed because it can be dangerous.
6. The need for more effective \_\_\_\_\_ is evident when we consider modern day problems like traffic.

**Answers:**1. economic growth 2. negative effects 3. carbon footprint 4. public transport 5. biological waste 6. urban planning**AB: p.20 Ex. 1****Philosopher-arithmetic-polymath-chemist-geometry-mathematician-physician**

1. My father teaches Maths.He's a .....
2. You must not take in medicine without consulting .....
3. We learn about shapes, lines, and angles when we study .....
4. Mr Shahin is a true ....., working in all kinds of creative and scientific fields.
5. Ramzi is very good with numbers and calculations.He always scores high in .....
6. A..... is someone who thinks and writes about meaning of life.

**Answers:**1. mathematician 2. physician 3. geometry 4. polymath 5. Arithmetic 6. Philosopher**AB: p.20 Ex. 2****1.talent 2.founder 3.scales 4.polymath 5.arithmetic 6.laboratory**

- |                                              |                                              |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>a. an expert in many subjects.</b>        | <b>b. a room for scientific experiments.</b> |
| <b>c. a person who starts something new.</b> | <b>d. an instrument to measure weight</b>    |
| <b>e. an engineer.</b>                       | <b>f. the study of numbers.</b>              |
| <b>g. special ability.</b>                   |                                              |

**Answers:** 1. g 2. c 3. d 4. a 5.f 6.b

**SB: p.29 Ex.7**

Write this sentence in three different ways, emphasizing the parts underlined in each case.

**Al-Jazari** invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.

**Answers:**

1. The person who invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century was Al-Jazari.  
It was Al-Jazari who/that invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.
2. The thing that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century was the mechanical clock.  
It was the mechanical clock that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century.
3. The period/ time when Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock was the twelfth century.  
It was in the twelfth century that Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock.

**SB: p.29 Ex.8**

Rewrite these sentences, **emphasizing the part in bold** and using the structure as shown.

1. **Al-Kindi** contributed to the invention of the oud. The person who \_\_\_\_\_
2. Jabir Ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory **in Iraq**. The country where \_\_\_\_\_
3. **Ali Ibn Nafi'** established the first music school in the world. It was \_\_\_\_\_
4. **Jabir Ibn Hayyan** also invented ink that can be read in the dark. It was \_\_\_\_\_
5. Al-Kindi is especially famous for **his work in geometry**. It is \_\_\_\_\_

**Answers:**

1. contributed to the invention of the oud was Al-Kindi.
2. Jabir Ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory was Iraq.
3. Ali Ibn Nafi' who established the first music school in the world.
4. Jabir Ibn Hayyan who/that also invented ink that can be read in the dark.
5. for his work in geometry that Al-Kindi is especially famous.

**AB: p.20 Ex.3**

Make cleft sentences, stressing the information in bold.

1. Queen Rania opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE. It was \_\_\_\_\_
2. Petra was made a World Heritage Site in **1985 CE**. The year \_\_\_\_\_
3. It stopped working at **11 p.m.** It was \_\_\_\_\_
4. **My father** has influenced me most. The person \_\_\_\_\_
5. I like **Geography** most of all. The subject \_\_\_\_\_
6. **The heat** made the journey unpleasant. It was \_\_\_\_\_

**Answers:**

1. Queen Rania who opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE.
2. when Petra was made a World Heritage Site was 1985 CE.
3. 11 p.m. when I stopped working.
4. who/that has influenced me most is my father.
5. that /which I like most of all is Geography.
6. the heat that/which made the journey unpleasant.

**AB: p.30 Ex.6****Write one sentence that means the same.**

1. The Egyptians built the pyramids. It was the \_\_\_\_\_  
 2. Ali attends to finish his project tonight. Ali is \_\_\_\_\_  
 3. London is a huge city. It's the capital of the UK. London \_\_\_\_\_

**Answers:**

1. It was the Egyptians that/who built the pyramids.  
 2. Ali is planning to finish his project tonight.  
 3. London, which is the capital of the UK, is a huge city.

**Relative clauses****SB: p.31 Ex.5****Complete the text with the correct word from the box. Sometimes, more than one answer is possible.**

That / which / where / who

Qasr Bashir is an extremely well-preserved Roman castle (1) \_\_\_\_\_ is situated in the Jordanian desert, and is about eighty kilometers south of Amman.

The walls and huge corner towers of the castle, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ was built at the beginning of the fourth century CE, are still standing.

It is thought that Qasr Bashir was built to protect the Roman border. Apart from the rooms in the castle, there are also about twenty-three stables (3) \_\_\_\_\_ horses may have been kept.

People (4) \_\_\_\_\_ love exploring historical Roman ruins will certainly find a visit to Qasr Bashir very rewarding. Once inside the building, one can imagine very vividly what it would have been like to live there during the times of the Roman Empire.

**Answers:** 1. which/that 2. which 3. where 4. who/that**SB: p.31 Ex.8****Pronunciation: minimal pairs (1)**

- |                                            |                         |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| The words which contain the p sound /p/    | pen / pack / rope       |
| The words which contain the b sound /b/    | bend / back / robe      |
| The words which contain the n sound /n/    | sun / India / win       |
| The words which contain the ing sound /ɪŋ/ | song / singing / wing   |
| The words which contain the i sound /ɪ/    | fit / give / middle     |
| The words which contain the ee sound /i:/  | been / dream / medium   |
| The words which contain the a sound /æ/    | and / back / ran        |
| The words which contain the ar sound /ɑ:/  | bath / car / half       |
| The words which contain the e sound /e/    | best / egg / deaf       |
| The words which contain the ir sound /ɜ:/  | birthday / world / girl |

**AB: p.21 Ex. 4****Match the beginning with the correct endings and join them a relative pronoun.**

1. A mathematician is someone ...                      2. Geometry and arithmetic are subjects ...  
 3. 'Physician' is an old-fashioned word ...                      4. A chemist is a person ...  
 5. The stars and planets are things ...

- A. are studied by mathematicians.                      b. means 'doctor'  
 c. works with numbers.                      d. astronomers study.  
 e. works in a laboratory.

**Answers:**

- 1 c: A mathematician is someone who works with numbers.  
 2 a: Geometry and arithmetic are subjects that/which are studied by mathematicians.  
 3 b: 'Physician' is an old-fashioned word that/which means 'doctor'.  
 4 e: A chemist is a person who/that works in a laboratory.  
 5 d: The stars and planets are things that/which astronomers study.

**AB: p.21 Ex. 5****Complete the text about Ibn Sina, using the relative pronouns in the box one pronoun is used twice. Add commas for the non- defining relative clauses.****That / when / which / who**

Ibn Sina (1) \_\_\_\_\_ is also known as Avicenna was a polymath. Ibn Sina was influenced as a young man by the works of the philosopher Aristotle. He wrote on early Islamic philosophy (2) \_\_\_\_\_ included many subjects, especially logic and ethics. He also wrote ALQanun fi-Tibb, the book (3) \_\_\_\_\_ became the most famous medical textbook ever. In the last ten or twelve years of his life, Ibn Sina started studying literary matters. His friends (4) \_\_\_\_\_ were worried about his health advised him to relax. He refused and told them 'I prefer a short life with width to a narrow one with length.'  
 It was the month of Ramadan (5) \_\_\_\_\_ Ibn Sina died, in June 1037 CE.

**Answers:**

1. ,who is also known as Avicenna,                      2. ,which included many subjects,  
 3. that                      4. ,who were worried about his health,                      5. when

**Derivation****اِقَاتِشَلَات****AB: p.21 Ex. 7****Complete the sentences with words formed from the words in brackets.**

1. The Middle East is famous for the \_\_\_\_\_ of olive oil. (produce)  
 2. Ibn Sina wrote \_\_\_\_\_ textbooks. (medicine)  
 3. Fatima al-Fihri was born in the \_\_\_\_\_ century. (nine)  
 4. My father bought our house with an \_\_\_\_\_ from his grandfather. (inherit)  
 5. Scholars have discovered an \_\_\_\_\_ document from the twelfth century. (origin)  
 6. Do you think the wheel was the most important \_\_\_\_\_ ever? (invent)

7. Al-Kindi made many important mathematical \_\_\_\_\_ (discover)  
 8. Who was the most \_\_\_\_\_ writer of the twentieth century? (influence)

**Answers:**

1. production 2. medical 3. ninth 4. inheritance 5. original 6. invention 7. discoveries 8. Influential

**AB: p. 25 Ex. 9**

**Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. Petra is an important \_\_\_\_\_ site. (archaeology)  
 2. I will be going to university to continue my \_\_\_\_\_. (educate)  
 3. In our exam, we had to \_\_\_\_\_ a text from Arabic into English. (translation)  
 4. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ a new air conditioning unit in our flat. (installation)  
 5. Thank you for your help, I really \_\_\_\_\_ it. (appreciation)  
 6. Have you seen Nasser's \_\_\_\_\_ of postcards? He's got hundreds! (collect)

**Answers:**

1. archaeological 2. education 3. translate 4. install 5. appreciate 6. collection

**SB: p. 39 Ex. 7**

**Complete the text with suitable words derived from the words in brackets.**

Madaba is the place where most Jordanian weavers buy their raw materials. Sheep's wool, and goat and camel hair are used by Bedouin tribes and villagers all over Jordan to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (product) rugs, bags and other beautiful items. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (traditional), the whole process is done by hand, from the washing of the wool to the finish article. There is a particular Bedouin style of (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (weave) that buyers find very (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (attraction). Another craft practiced in Madaba is the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (creative) of ceramic items.

**Answers:** 1. produce 2. Traditionally 3. weaving 4. attractive 5. creation

**AB: p. 24 Ex. 3**

**Complete the sentences with the correct adjective. One adjective is not needed. The first one is done for you.** على المعنى فقط

**Contemporary, cultural, educational, major, ongoing, visual**

1. We went to the concert yesterday. The music was written by a new young composer, it was .....  
 2. When we go to on school trips, we always learn new things because the trips are.....  
 3. King Hussein was a..... world figure in the twentieth century.  
 4. Photography and painting are two examples of the ..... arts.  
 5. Art, music and literature are all part of our ..... life.

**Answers:**

1. contemporary 2. educational 3. major 4. visual 5. cultural

**SB: p. 42 Ex. 4**

**Choose the most suitable item from the words given in the box to complete the sentences.**

1. Many instruments that are still today in ----- were designed by Arab scholars. (**operational / operate / operations**)  
 2. When do you ----- to receive your test results? (**expect / expectedly / expectancy**)

Complete the following sentences with the suitable words derived from the words in the box: نمط جديد

educate, install, archaeology

1. Petra is an important \_\_\_\_\_ site.
2. I will be going to university to continue my \_\_\_\_\_.

translation, installation, Influence

3. In our exam, we had to \_\_\_\_\_ a text from Arabic into English.
4. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ a new air conditioning unit in our flat.

collect, appreciation, Weave

5. Thank you for your help, I really \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. Have you seen Nasser's \_\_\_\_\_ of postcards? He's got hundreds!

Answers: 1. archaeological 2. education 3. translate 4. install 5. appreciate 6. collection



# Action Pack 12

المستوى الثالث

المنهاج الجديد

الوحدة الخامسة Unit 5

The Arts

الفنون

Teacher: Sohaib Yaser 0788650494

## The arts in Jordan

<p>Jordan has a very rich cultural heritage thanks to the support of the Department of Culture and the Arts, which was founded in 1966 CE. Since then, the department has built up an exciting, ongoing programme of cultural activities related to all the arts: music, visual arts, performing arts and the written word.</p>	<p>للاردن ارث ثقافي غني يعود لدعم قسم الثقافة والفنون والذي تم تأسيسه عام 1966 للميلاد. منذ ذلك الحين اعد القسم برنامجاً مدهلاً مستمراً للنشاطات الثقافية مرتبطاً بكل الفنون كالموسيقى والفنون المرئية والفنون الأدائية والمكتوبة.</p>
<p>In 1979 CE, the Royal Society of Fine Arts (RSFA) was established to promote visual arts in Jordan and other countries in the region. It has links with major art galleries around the world in order to encourage artists from different cultures to learn from each other.</p>	<p>تم تأسيس المجمع الملكي للفنون الجميلة عام 1979 لتسويق الفنون المرئية في الأردن وبلاد اخرى في المنطقة. له علاقات مع معارض فنية رئيسية حول العالم لتشجيع الثقافات من دول مختلفة ليتعلموا من بعضهم.</p>
<p>The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts is one of the most important art museums in the Middle East. The collection includes over 2,000 works of art, including paintings, sculptures, photographs, installations, textiles and ceramics, by more than 800 artists from 59 countries. In 2013 CE, it held Jordan's largest art exhibition called '70 Years of Contemporary Jordanian Art'.</p>	<p>يعد معرض الأردن الوطني احد اهم المتاحف الفنية في الشرق الأوسط. تضم المجموعة اكثر من 2000 عمل فني كالرسم والنحت والتصوير والتركييب والنسيج والسيراميك قام بها 800 فنان من 59 دولة. في عام 2013 انعقد المعرض في اكبر معرض للفنون في الاردن وسمي 70 عاما من الفن الأردني المعاصر.</p>
<p>Until the 1990s, most Jordanian literature was only available in Arabic. However, thanks to PROTA (the Project of Translation from Arabic), many Jordanian plays, novels, short stories and poems are now translated into English, and people all over the world are able to read and appreciate them.</p>	<p>كان الفن الأردني وحتى التسعينيات متوفراً فقط باللغة العربية. ولكن بفضل "برنامج الترجمة من العربية" تم ترجمة العديد من الروايات والمسرحيات والقصص القصيرة والقصائد إلى اللغة الإنجليزية. فيستطيع الناس حول العالم قراءتها وتقييمها.</p>
<p>Every year, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) chooses a different Arab city as the Arab Cultural Capital. In 2002 CE, the city of Amman was awarded this title.</p>	<p>تختار منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتعليم والعلوم والثقافة مدينة عربية كعاصمة للثقافة العربية. منتحت العاصمة الأردنية عمان هذا اللقب.</p>
<p>Jordan has a centuries-old musical heritage. The National Music Conservatory (NMC) opened in 1986 CE, making it possible for more Jordanian students to study music seriously.</p>	<p>للأردن ارث موسيقي يرجع عمره لقرن من الزمان، تم افتتاح المركز الوطني للموسيقى عام 1986 معطياً الأردنيين فرصة دراسة الموسيقى بشكل جدي.</p>
<p>In 1987 CE, the National Centre for Culture and Arts was created, which showcases theatre and dance in Jordan and in the region.</p>	<p>وفي عام 1987 تم انشاء المركز الوطني للثقافة والفنون والذي يتم فيه عروض مسرحية و رقص في الأردن والمنطقة.</p>
<p>Realising the value of art and culture, Jordan decided to offer Jordanians and the world an annual arts festival. In 1981 CE, the Jerash Festival for Culture and Arts was founded. This three-week-long summer programme is one of the largest cultural activities in the region. It takes place in the important archaeological site of Jerash, which underlines the close relationship between the arts and Jordan's cultural history.</p>	<p>قررت الأردن مدركة قيمة الفن والثقافة اتاحة الفرصة للأردنيين وللعالم أجمع عمل مهرجان سنوي للفنون. ففي عام 1981 تم تأسيس مهرجان جرش للثقافة والفنون. هذا الإحتفال الصيفي ذا الثلاث أسابيع يعد واحد من اكبر المهرجانات في المنطقة. يحدث هذا المهرجان في المكان التاريخي في جرش والذي يؤكد على العلاقة الحميمة بين الفن وتاريخ الأردن الثقافي.</p>

**Words must be saved**

**كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً**

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
heritage	ارث	poems	قصائد				
ongoing	مستمر	translated	ترجمت				
promote	تسويق	appreciate	يقدر / يقيم				
sculptures	النحت	archaeological	مكان تاريخي				
Contemporary	معاصر						
plays	مسرحيات						
novel	روايات						

**SB: p.34**

Words	Meanings (E)	Words(A)
ceramics (n)	the art of producing something <u>made from clay</u> or porcelain, or the clay or porcelain items themselves	خزفي
conservatory (n)	(American usage for British conservatoire) a school where people are trained in music or acting	المعهد الموسيقي
Fine Arts	drawings, paintings and sculptures that are admired for their beauty and have no practical use	الفنون الجميلة
installation (n)	an art exhibit often involving video or moving parts	تجهيزات فنية
textiles	types of cloth or woven fabric	الغزل والنسيج
visual arts (n)	art such as painting or sculpture that you look at, as opposed to literature or music	فنون بصرية
performing arts	a type of art that can combine acting, dance, painting and film to express an idea	فنون الاداء

**QUESTIONS**

- 1- How does the Royal Society of Fine Arts show its support for the arts in Jordan?
- 2- What makes The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts a major institution in the world of art
- 3- How has translation helped Jordanian literature?
- 4- What is the significance of the location of the annual Jerash Festival?
- 5- 'To truly understand a country's culture, you have to understand its artistic heritage.' Do you agree or disagree? Justify your answer.
6. Department of Culture and the Arts has built up an exciting programme of cultural activities. Write down these cultural activities.
7. Why was the Royal Society of Fine Arts established?
8. The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts includes many works of art. Write down these works of arts.
- 9- Mention an achievement of "the Department of Culture and the Arts"?
- 10- When was the Royal Society of Fine Arts established and why?

- 11- What does the collection of The Jordan National Gallery of Fine Arts include?  
 12- What does “PROTA” stand for?  
 13- Write down three genres that “PROTA” helped in translating.  
 14- When was Amman entitled as “the Arab Cultural Capital”?  
 15- What do the underlined pronouns refer to?  
 16- (Critical Thinking) What are the advantages and disadvantages of festivals such as “the Jerash Festival for Culture and Arts”?

## Modal answers

1. It shows its support by having links with major art galleries around the world and by promoting visual arts in Jordan.
2. It is so important because it has over 2,000 works of art by more than 800 artists from 59 countries.
3. Translation has helped Jordanian literature by making it more accessible to people all over the world.
4. It takes place in Jerash, which is an important archeological site. This shows the close relationship between the arts and Jordan’s cultural history.
5. I agree with this statement, culture gives a vivid picture about people in the past and present. For example, nowadays people outside Jordan and the Arab world will understand Jordanian culture.
6. Music, visual arts, performing arts and the written word.
7. To promote visual arts in Jordan and other countries in the region.
8. Paintings, sculptures, photographs, installations, textiles and ceramics.

### SB: p.37 Sand Bottle Artists’ Inspiration

<p>You only have to look at Jordan’s beautiful mountains to see where the country’s sand bottle artists get their inspiration from. This has led to an absolutely amazing traditional art form. Today, sand artists use artificial colors, sand and tools to create mini paintings, sometimes only a few centimeters high, in glass bottles. These ‘paintings without a brush’ need an eye for detail, and a lot of patience. With time and skill, extremely beautiful scenes can be created, for example, lifelike camels traveling through the vast deserts. The end result is totally breathtaking. Anyone watching a sand artist at work will realize immediately how much skill is needed for this work.</p>	<p>يلزمك فقط النظر إلى الجبال الجميلة في الأردن لتعرف من أين يحصل فناني قوارير الرمل على الهامهم. أدى هذا إلى نشوء فن تقليدي مذهل يستخدم الفنانون هذه الأيام ألوان وأتربة وأدوات صناعية لخلق لوحات فنية صغيرة أحياناً لا يصل ارتفاعها لعدة سنتيمترات في علب زجاجية. هذه اللوحات التي يتم رسمها بلا ريشة تحتاج إلى نظرة تفصيلية والكثير من الصبر. يمكن خلق مشاهد رفيعة الجمال من خلال المهارة والوقت. على سبيل المثال يتم رسم جمال كالحقيقية تمشي في وسط صحراء واسعة. النتيجة النهائية تخطف الأنفاس. فأني شخص يشاهد فنان الزجاجات الرملية سيدرك حالاً المهارة المطلوبة لهذا العمل.</p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى

# QUESTIONS

- 1- Where should we look to see where sand bottle artists get their inspiration from?
- 2- What is the size of those bottle paintings?
- 3- What do artists use to make such beautiful work?
- 4- What does the pronoun "their" refer to?
- 5- (Critical Thinking): Artists these days ask for high price for such sand bottles, do you think this is a positive thing or not, do you agree that prices should be accessible for each one?

## Adnan, a professional craftsman

<p>Adnan, a professional craftsman, is at work in his studio. With the oven at 1,400 degrees Centigrade, 20 hours a day, a glass-making studio isn't the most comfortable place to be. For Adnan, however, this is more than just a job. 'My family has been blowing glass for around 700 years,' he says. 'My father learnt the craft from his father, and he taught it to me when I was a child.'</p>	<p>عدنان حرفي محترف في عمله في الأستديو. مع الفرن ذا ال 1400 درجة مئوية طوال عشرين ساعة في اليوم، فالمكان المحمص لصناعة الزجاج ليس بالمكان المريح لتكون هناك. انها اكثر من وظيفة بالنسبة لعدنان " فعائلتي نفخت الزجاج لاكثر من 700 عام " يقول عدنان " . فلقد تعلم والدي الحرفة من والده وعلمني هو هذه الحرفة منذ كنت طفلاً.</p>
<p>Adnan is passionate about this ancient craft, and regularly gives demonstrations and workshops to teach young people the skills of glassblowing.</p>	<p>عدنان متحمس بشأن هذه الحرفة القديمة، ويعطي ايضاحات عملية وورشات عمل بشكل منتظم ليعلم الشباب مهارات نفخ وتشكيل الزجاج.</p>
<p>He strongly believes that unless we interest more young people in learning the craft, nobody will know how to make hand-blown glass in the future. 'These days, young people don't always want to follow their parents' professions, and, added to that, glassblowing isn't an easy job. It has to be an obsession, as it is for me!'</p>	<p>يؤمن بأنه اذا لم نعمل على اثاره اهتمام الشباب لتعلم الحرفة، لن يعرف احد كيفية عمل الزجاج في المستقبل " . هذه الأيام لا يريد الشباب اتباع مهن اهلهم " ويضيف الى ذلك " تشكيل الزجاج بالنفخ ليست بالمهنة السهلة ، يجب ان تكون هوس كما هي بالنسبة لي " .</p>
<p>Adnan still uses the technique that was first developed by the Phoenicians some 2,000 years ago. First, he pushes a thin metal blowpipe into the boiling hot furnace. Secondly, he lifts out the liquid sand and lays it on a metal plate. After that, he blows the red-hot glass until it becomes more flexible. Then he pulls and bends the glass into shape. He has to work extremely quickly because the liquid sand is already solidifying into glass. Adnan is making a delicate swan. Through the semi-opaque glass, you can see fine lines of turquoise, green and blue.</p>	<p>لازال عدنان يستخدم التقنية التي استخدمها الفينيقيون قبل حوالي 2000 سنة. أولاً يقوم بدفع قضيب النفخ الغليظ في الفرن الساخن الذي يغلي. ثانياً، ثم يحمل الرمل المسال ويضعه على صينية حديدية. بعدها ينفخ الزجاج المحمر من الحرارة حتى يصبح اكثر مرونة. ثم يشد ويثني الزجاج الى اشكال يجب عليه ان يعمل بسرعة فائقة لأن الزجاج المسال يتصلب إلى زجاج. عدنان يصنع إوزة رقيقة. تري خلال الزجاج المعتم خطوطاً تركوازية ( فيروزية ) وخضراً وزرقاء.</p>
<p>'The sand gives us transparent, or "white", glass,' Adnan explains. 'We get this beautiful dark, cobalt blue by adding the metal cobalt to the melted glass. Then, this blue becomes a lighter, sea-green turquoise after adding copper. Finally, we decorate the glass by hand.'</p>	<p>يوضح عدنان " يعطينا الرمل زجاجاً شفافاً او ابيضاً " ونحصل على هذا اللون الكوبالتي المائل على الازرق بإضافة معدن الكوبالت إلى الزجاج المذاب. ثم يصبح هذا الزرق أخف ومائل إلى خضرة البحر بعد اضافة النحاس. ومن ثم نخرق الزجاج يدوياً.</p>

'These days we recycle broken glass. We also use commercially produced colours instead of using natural ingredients as in the past. Apart from that, nothing else about this craft has changed through the centuries. You can't use a machine to do this work,' he says. 'The old ways are still the best.'

"نعمل هذه الأيام على إعادة تكرير الزجاج القديم. ونستخدم أيضا الوانا تجارية بدلا من استخدام مكونات صناعية كما في الماضي. وغير ذلك، لم يتغير شيء على هذه المهنة عبر القرون. لا نستطيع استخدام ماكينات للقيام بهذا العمل "يقول" فالطرق القديمة ما زالت هي الأفضل..

### Words must be saved

### كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
craftsman	حرفي (مهنة)	furnace	فرن	transparent	شفاف		
oven	فرن	liquid	سائل	melted	مذاب		
blowing	ينفخ	flexible	مرن	decorate	يزين / يزخرف		
demonstrations	توضيح	bend	يثني				
obsession	هوس	solidifying	يتصلب				

### SB: p.38

Words	Meanings (E)	Words(A)
furnace	a container which is heated to a very high temperature, so that substances that are put inside it, such as metal, will melt or burn(oven)	فرن
solidifying	to become solid or to make something solid	يتصلب
semi-opaque	preventing light from travelling through, and therefore not transparent or translucent	شبيه بالداكن ليس بالشفاف
fine	smooth and soft	لطيف خفيف
transparent	you can see through it very clearly	شفاف
cobalt	Silvery white chemical element	عنصر كوبالت
turquoise	(having) a deep blue or greenish-blue colour	اخضر مزرق

## QUESTIONS

- 1- What type of glass do they use these days to produce the nice works?
- 2- Can we use machines to do this work? Why? Why not?
- 3- What do they use to get that beautiful dark?
- 4- Who developed the technique Adnan is using these days?
- 5- According to the fourth paragraph, what are the steps Adnan uses to produce his works?
- 6- How can we save this tradition, according to Adnan?

7- Critical Thinking: Adnan said that his father taught him this craft. What does that mean for you when fathers teach their children their crafts?

8- What do the bolded pronouns refer to?

9- Find a word in the text which means “Someone who is very skilled at a particular craft”

10. Quite the sentence which indicates that Adnan uses an ancient way for glassblowing.

11. There are several processes for making glass from sand?

First, he pushes a thin metal blowpipe into the boiling hot furnace. Secondly, he lifts out the liquid sand and lays it on a metal plate. After that, he blows the red-hot glass until it becomes more flexible. Then he pulls and bends the glass into shape.

**B- Read the article again and choose the correct answers.**

1- A glass-making studio isn't comfortable because:

A it hasn't changed much in hundreds of years. **B** it's incredibly hot. C everything is done by hand. D it is very small.

2- Adnan runs workshops and gives demonstrations because

**A** he wants young people to learn the craft. B glassblowing isn't an easy job. C it is an ancient craft. D he has to work quickly.

3- A glassblower has to work very fast because

A the furnace is extremely hot. B machines are not used to do the work.

C hot, liquid glass becomes hard very quickly. D he is making a glass swan.

## Rashid's Blog

Hi! My name is Rashed. I'm staying in London for a week, with my family. I hope you enjoy reading my blog.	مرحباً! اسمي راشد. أنا في لندن لمدة اسبوع، مع عائلتي. أأمل ان تستمتعوا في قراءة مدونتي.
<b>Wednesday</b> Yesterday was brilliant. We decided to go to the Victoria and Albert Museum (also known as the V&A), which is a big museum of art and design in central London. It has one of the largest collections of Islamic art in the world and, as you can imagine, we were keen to <b>have a look</b> .	الأربعاء كان امس يوم رائع. قررنا الذهاب الى متحف فيكتوريا والبرت (معروف أيضا ب في اند أي)، وهو متحف كبير للفن والتصميم في وسط لندن. فيه احدى اكبر المجموعات الفنية الإسلامية و كما يمكنك ان تتخيل كنا حريصين على ان نلقي نظرة.
We spent most of our time in the Jameel Gallery, which opened in 2006 CE. There were about 10,000 items on display (no, I didn't count them; the guide told us!). There were carpets and other textiles as well as pottery, ceramics, paintings and things made of ivory (from elephants), wood, metal and glass. My <b>favourite</b> thing was a beautiful Egyptian jug, which looked as if it was made out of glass. In fact it is rock crystal, and it was made over ten thousand years ago. The person who made it must have been incredibly skilled.	قضينا اغلب وقتنا في معرض جميل، الذي افتتح في عام 2006 للميلاد. كان هناك حوالي 10000 قطعة معروضة (لا، لم اعداها؛ لقد اخبرنا الدليل) !كان هناك سجاد ومنسوجات أخرى وبعض الفخاريات أيضا وبعض أعمال السيراميك، رسوم و أشياء مصنوعة من العاج (من الفيلة)، ومن الخشب والمعادن ومن الزجاج. أكثر ما اثار اعجابي هو دورق بدا كأنه مصنوع من الزجاج، في الحقيقة، انه مصنوع من حجر الكريستال وكان قد صنع قبل حوالي عشرة آلاف عام. ألابد ان الشخص الذي صنعها كان ماهراً بشكل لا يعقل.
We were at the V&A all day (there's a good café there, and an excellent shop too!). Then, although we were quite tired, in the evening we went to a concert at the Royal Albert Hall. The orchestra was from Germany and it was brilliant! We had comfortable seats, but a lot of people stood right in front of	كنا في المتحف طوال اليوم (يوجد مقهى جيد هناك، ودكان متميز ايضا) !ثم، بالرغم من اننا كنا منهكين تماماً، ذهبنا في المساء إلى حفلة موسيقية في قاعة البرت الملكية. كانت الفرقة الموسيقية من ألمانيا وكانت رائعة! حظينا بكراس مريحة لكن

the orchestra. They didn't sit down at all! **I've never stood all the way through a concert**, and I don't think I'd like to!

كان الكثيرون يقفون امام الفرقة لم يجلسوا نهائيا! لم اقف نهائيا طوال حفلة ولا اعتقد اني اراغب بذلك.

### Words must be saved

كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
collections	مجموعة	textiles	منسوجات				
imagine	يتخيل	pottery	فخار				
keen	حريص	ivory	العاج				
Gallery	معرض	orchestra	فرقة موسيقية				
carpets	سجاد						

## QUESTIONS

- 1- Where was Rashed when he wrote the blog?
- 2- What did he most enjoy looking at?
- 3- Where did he go in the evening?
- 4- What bothered him?
- 5- Why did Rashed and his family decide to go to the V&A Museum?
- 6- Name four materials that Rashed mentions.
- 7- Look at the words and phrases in bold. Is Rashed using British or American English? Justify your answer.
- 8- Look at the sentences in brackets in lines 5–6. In your opinion, what question is Rashed answering and why?
- 9- Would you stand up all the way through a concert? Why/Why not?
- 10- Critical Thinking: What is the goal of blogs? Would you wish to have one?
- 11- What do the underlined words refer to?

## Modal answers

1. He was in London.
2. A beautiful Egyptian jug.
3. A concert at the Royal Albert Hall.
4. A lot of people stood in front of the orchestra and didn't sit down at all.
5. Because the V&A has one of the largest collections of Islamic art in the world.
6. Glass, metal, ivory, wood.
7. Rashed is using British English. He says 'have a look' instead of 'take a look'; he spills 'favourite' with 'ou' instead of 'o'; and he uses the present perfect instead of the past simple in 'I've never stood all the way through a concern.'

### AB: p.24 Ex.1

1. Watch people acting a story at **a theatre / an installation**.
  2. Admire **textiles / ceramics** but don't break them!
  3. Look at beautiful pieces of art at a **play / gallery**.
  4. Look at **an installation / a theatre** that has been set up in a public space.
  5. Look at and touch **textiles / handicrafts** that have been sewn together.
- Answers :** 1. theatre 2. ceramics 3. gallery 4. an installation 5. textiles



**AB: p.24 Ex.2****Ceramics-exhibition- gallery-handicrafts-heritage-sculpture-textiles**

1. beautiful objects made by hand.
2. a place where art is shown.
3. a solid piece of art, usually made of stone, metal or wood.
4. an event during which works of art are displayed.
5. art made from clay.
6. traditional culture ,such as art, architecture, customs and beliefs.

**Answers :** 1. handicrafts 2. gallery 3. sculpture 4. exhibition 5. ceramics 6. heritage

**AB: p.24 Ex.2****contemporary-cultural- educational-major-ongoing-visual**

1. We went to a concert yesterday. The music was written by a new young composer, so it was .....
2. when we go on school trip, we always learn new things because the trips are .....
3. King Hussein was a ..... world figure in the twentieth century.
4. photography and painting are two examples of the ..... arts.
5. art, music and literature are all part of our ..... life.

**Answers :** 1. contemporary 2. educational- 3. major 4. visual 5. cultural

**Articles****SB: p. 35 Ex. 5**

**Find an example of the following uses of articles in the report. (The Arts of Jordan)**

1. The/ when the speaker and listener know what/who is being spoken about.
2. A, An/ when it is not known what/who is being spoken about or it does not matter.
3. The/ when we refer to a proper noun where there is only one of its type.
4. Zero article/ before uncountable and plural nouns, and when we talking about something in general.
5. Zero article/ before the names of most countries, mountain ranges, languages, continents, towns, streets, days, months and years.

**Answers:**

1. the department (line 3)
2. an exciting, ongoing programme (line 4) a; different Arab city (line 26-27)
3. the Department of Culture and the Arts (line 2); the Royal Society of Fine Arts (line 7); the National Centre for Culture and Arts (line 33)
4. music (line 5); art galleries (line 9); artists (line 10); literature (line 19)
5. Jordan (line 1); 1979 (line 7); 2013 (line 17); 2002 (line 27); Amman (line 28); 1987 (line 33); Jerash (line 41)

**SB: p. 35 Ex. 6**

**Complete the text with a, an, the or-(zero article).**

The Amman International Theatre Festival is said to be (1) \_\_\_\_\_ biggest of its kind across (2) \_\_\_\_\_ entire Middle East and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ North Africa. It is held annually in (4) \_\_\_\_\_ April, and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ festival is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ attempt to promote (7) \_\_\_\_\_ Jordanian theatre. Performances are in (8) \_\_\_\_\_ English and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ Arabic. Many international stars and famous people from (10) \_\_\_\_\_

Hollywood attend. Usually, (11) \_\_\_\_\_ festival lasts for about eight days. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ visitors can choose (13) \_\_\_\_\_ days on which they want to attend. This is (14) \_\_\_\_\_ great way to learn about different cultures at one event.

**Answers:**

1. the 2. the 3. X 4. X 5. the 6. an 7. X 8. X 9. X 10. X 11. the 12. X 13. the 14. a

## **AB: p. 24 Ex. 4**

**Complete the sentences with a, an, the or-(zero article).**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Amman is \_\_\_\_\_ capital of \_\_\_\_\_ Jordan.
2. It's one of \_\_\_\_\_ oldest cities in \_\_\_\_\_ world.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Petra is in \_\_\_\_\_ south of Jordan. It's \_\_\_\_\_ important archaeological site.
4. It was \_\_\_\_\_ important city until \_\_\_\_\_ huge earthquake destroyed it in about 663 CE.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Aqaba is the next to \_\_\_\_\_ Red Sea; \_\_\_\_\_ people often go there for their holidays.
6. I'm very interested in \_\_\_\_\_ history, in particular \_\_\_\_\_ history of \_\_\_\_\_ Jordan..

**Answers**

1. X, the, X 2. The, the 3. X, the, an 4. An, a, 5. X, the, X 6. X, the, X

## **AB: p. 25 Ex. 5**

**Read and correct the dialogue. Add a, an or the.**

1a: I'm reading \_\_\_\_\_ really good book.

B: oh, what's \_\_\_\_\_ title?

2 a: Do you ever go to the art galleries?

B: Yes, I do. There's \_\_\_\_\_ big gallery in our town, and I often go there.

3 a: Where are \_\_\_\_\_ Pontic Mountains?

B: They're in turkey.

4 a: Is there \_\_\_\_\_ art museum in Amman?

B: Yes, go to \_\_\_\_\_ National Museum of Fine Arts.

5 a: Do you like music?

B: Yes, I do. I play \_\_\_\_\_ piano, actually.

**Answers:** 1. a/the 2. a 3. the 4.an/the 5. The

## American Vs. British

### AB: p. 25 Ex. 6

Mark is American and Bruce is British. How would Bruce say sentences 1-3 in British English? How would Mark say sentences 4-6 in American English?

- 1 Mark: Did you see that exhibition yet? Bruce: \_\_\_\_\_  
2 Mark: I usually take a shower in the morning. Bruce: \_\_\_\_\_  
3 Mark: I just had my breakfast. Bruce: \_\_\_\_\_  
4 Bruce: Where's Leo? Have you seen him anywhere? Mark: \_\_\_\_\_  
5 Bruce: I'd like to have a look at those paintings. Mark: \_\_\_\_\_  
6 Bruce: Leo's already done his project. Mark: \_\_\_\_\_

Answers:

1. Have you seen that exhibition yet? 2. I usually have a shower in the morning.  
3. I've just had my breakfast. 4. Where's Leo? Did you see him anywhere?  
5. I'd like to take a look at those paintings. 6. Leo already did his project.

### SB: p. 37 Ex. 8

Rewrite sentences using the words in American English spelling.

1. When I go to university, I want to specialise in astrophysics.  
2. You need to take your necklace to the jeweller to get it fixed.  
3. If you want to learn English, you could go to a language centre.  
4. This kind of medicine helps to normalise the heart's function.  
5. My favourite meal is mansaf.  
6. An architect can predict what a building will look like by modelling it on a computer.  
7. Tomorrow evening, I'm going to the theatre to see a play by Shakespeare.  
8. When the boat arrived at the harbour, we knew we had reached Lebanon.  
Answers : 1. specialize 2. jeweler 3. center 4. normalize 5. favorite 6. modeling 7. theater 8. harbor

## Writing: Argumentative Essay: المقالة الجدلية

‘Crafts people are skilled workers and should be paid better salaries.’

The job done by craftspeople only helps the economy if the people who publicise and sell their work are successful. Traditional crafts are usually not well publicised and are sold in very small amounts. This means that it would be impossible to provide a full and regular salary to a craftsman. These days, it is common for people to choose mass-produced goods for the simple reason that they cost less and can be relied upon. What is more, it is evident that the world is changing, and that the place that craftspeople hold in society is becoming less affordable. For this reason they should not be paid an increased wage. It could be argued that craftspeople endure difficult and tiring days and receive little money in recognition of this. However, they learn their trade as apprentices and do not have to suspend their income or pay a large amount of money for four years to get a university degree. Thus it can be seen that craftspeople should not be paid increased salaries, because of the restructured economic system and the consequent shift in the importance of the crafts they produce.

### Useful language:

It is understood that... It is often suggested that... Many people believe that... It is evident that... For this reason... It could be argued that... Thus it can be seen that...

### Writing skills: Moving from one idea to another

#### Expressing opposition:

*On one hand, ... On the other hand, ... /  
In spite of this, ... / On the contrary, ... / Conversely, ...*

#### Expressing continuation or addition:

*Furthermore, ... / Likewise, ... /  
One reason for this is ... / In addition, ...*

# Action Pack 12

المستوى الثالث

المنهاج الجديد

الوحدة الثالثة Unit 3

Medical advances

التقدم الطبي

Teacher: Sohaib Yaser 0788650494

## Complementary medicine: is it really a solution?

paragraph	
<p>Most doctors used to be sceptical about the validity of homoeopathy, acupuncture and other forms of complementary medicine. If patients wanted to receive this kind of non-conventional treatment, <u>they</u> used to have to consult a private practitioner who was likely not to have a medical degree. However, in recent years, the perception of this type of treatment has changed. These days, many family doctors study complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments, and many complementary medicine consultants also have medical degrees.</p>	<p>لطالما كان الأطباء متشككون في فاعلية وصحة الطب المثلي (التكميلي /التداوي بالأعشاب او بعض المواد) والوخز بالإبر وأشكال اخرى من الطب التكميلي. إذا رغب المريض بالتداوي بمثل هذه العلاجات غير التقليدية، فإنه يتوجب عليهم أن يستشيروا من يمارس هذا الطب والذين بالأغلب لا يحملون درجة علمية (شهادة طبية). وعلى اية حال، في السنوات الأخيرة، اختلف مفهوم هذا النوع من العلاج. فالعديد من أطباء العائلة هذه الأيام يدرسون الطب التكميلي جنباً إلى جنب مع الطب التقليدي. والعديد من المداويين بالطب التكميلي يحملون شهادات في الطب أيضاً.</p>
<p>Whereas critics used to say that there was no scientific evidence that non-conventional treatments actually worked, now it is more common for medical experts to recognise that conventional medicine may not always be the only way to treat an ailment.</p>	<p>لطالما قال النقاد أن الطب التكميلي لا يمتلك اي دليل علمي بأن المعالجة به نافعة، و إنه من الشائع ان الخبراء الطبيون اصبحوا مدركين ان الطب البديل او التكميلي هو ليس دائما الطريقة الوحيدة لعلاج الأمراض الخفيفة.</p>
<p>At a surgery in London, 70 per cent of patients <u>who</u> were offered the choice between a herbal or a conventional medicine for common complaints such as insomnia, arthritis and migraines chose the herbal remedy. Fifty per cent of patients then said that the treatment helped. One doctor said, "I now consider homoeopathy to be a viable option for many different conditions, including anxiety, depression and certain allergies. It provides another option when conventional medicine does not address the problem adequately."</p>	<p>في احد عيادات الطب الجراحي في لندن، % 70 من المرضى الذين خيروا بين العلاج بالأعشاب او اي علاج تكميلي بديل لشكاوى شائعة مثل الأرق والتهاب المفاصل والشقيقة اختاروا التداوي بالأعشاب. وقال عندها % 50 من المرضى عندها أن العلاج ساعدهم. قال احد الأطباء "انا الآن اخذ بعين الإعتبار ان الطب البديل التكميلي هو خيار قابل للنجاح للعديد من الحالات بما فيها القلق والإكتئاب وبعض الحساسية. فهي توفر خيار آخر عندما لا ينفع الطب التقليدي بشكل دقيق.</p>
<p>However, complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments. <b>It</b> can never substitute for immunisations as it will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. It also cannot be used to protect against malaria.</p>	<p>على اية حال، لا يمكن للطب البديل ان يُستخدم لكل الإستطببات العلاجية. لا يمكنها ان تحل محل عمليات التطعيم/التلقيح لأنها لن تنتج الأجسام المضادة والتي نحتاجها لتحمينا من أمراض الطفولة. ولا يمكنها ايضا ان تحمينا من الملاريا.</p>
<p>One doctor said, "I will always turn to conventional medical treatment first to ensure that no underlying condition is missed. However, the idea of complementary treatments is no longer an alien concept. In my opinion, it should work alongside modern medicine, and not against it."</p>	<p>اعرب احد الأطباء انه سيقوم بالعودة للعلاجات الطبية التقليدية أولا ليتأكد انه لم يمر عن اي حالة خفية. وعلى ايه حال، فإن العلاج بالطب البديل لم تعد فكرة غريبة. في رأيه يجب على الطب البديل ان يعمل جنباً إلى جنب مع الطب الحديث وليس ضده.</p>

**Words must be saved**

**كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً**

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Complementary	مكتمل	Family	عائلة	Patient	مرريض	Anxiety	قلق
Medicine	دواء	Alongside	جنباً إلى جنب	Offer	يعرض	Depression	إكتئاب
Solution	حل	Whereas	في حين	Choice	اختيار	Certain	مؤكد
Sceptical	شكاك	Critics	ناقد	Herbal	عشبي	Address(v)	يخاطب
Validity	صلاحية	Scientific	علمي	Complaint	شكوى	Adequately	على نحو كافٍ
Homoeopathy	طب الأعشاب	Evidence	دليل	Insomnia	أرق	Substitute	بديل
Acupuncture	الوخز بالإبر	Actually	حقاً	Arthritis	إلتهاب مفاصل	Immunisation	تحصين
Forms	نماذج	Common	شائع	Migraines	صداع نصفي	Antibodies	أجسام مضادة
Conventional	تقليدي	Recognise	يعترف	chose	اختار	Against	ضد
Treatment	علاج	may	ربما	Remedy	علاج	Childhood	طفولة
Consult	يستشير	Always	دائماً	Consider	يعتبر	Disease	مرض
Private	خاص	Only	فقط	Viable	قابل للحياة	Malaria	مرض الملاريا
Practitioner	ممارس	Ailment	مرض	Option	خيار	Ensure	يؤكد
Degree	درجة	Surgery	عملية	Different	مختلف	Underlying	أساسي
Recent	قريب / حديث	London	عاصمة بريطانيا لندن	Condition	حالة	Missed	أغفل
Perception	إدراك	Per cent	بالمئة	Including	يتضمن	Alien	فضائي (غريب)
						Concept	مفهوم
						opinion	رأي

Words	Meanings (E)	Words
acupuncture (n)	a system of complementary medicine in which fine needles are inserted in the skin at specific points.	الوخز بالإبر
ailment (n)	illness.	مرض خفيف
allergy (n) allergic (adj)	a reaction of the immune system when it is sensitive to something; this reaction comes in the form of sneezing, itchy eyes or a skin rash.	تحسس/حساسية
arthritis (n) arthritic (adj)	a disease causing painful inflammation and stiffness of the joints.	إلتهاب المفاصل
herbal remedy (n)	an extract or mixture of a plant used to prevent,	التداوي بالأعشاب
remedy (v)	alleviate, or cure disease. remedial (adj)	تداوي
homoeopathy (n)	a system of complementary medicine in which illnesses are treated by minute doses of herbs and other natural substances.	المعالجة المثلية
immunisation (n)	the process by which an individual's immune system becomes protected against an illness. immunise (v) immune (adj)	التلقيح
malaria (n)	a dangerous disease transmitted by mosquitoes.	مرض الملاريا
migraine (n)	a very bad headache which often comes with a feeling of sickness and problems with vision.	الصداع النصفي الشقيقة
antibody (n)	a substance produced by the body to fight disease.	الجسم المضاد

<b>complementary- medicine</b>	<b>medical treatment which provides an alternative to scientific medical practices. complement (v)</b>	الطب البديل الطب التكميلي
<b>conventional (adj)</b>	<b>having been used for a long time and is considered usual. convention (n) conventionally (adv)</b>	تقليدي
<b>option (n) optional (adj)</b>	<b>something that is or may be chosen.</b>	خيار
<b>viable (adj) viability (n)</b>	<b>effective and able to be successful.</b>	قابل للنجاح
<b>practitioner (n)</b>	<b>someone who is qualified or registered to practise a</b>	من يمارس مهنة او
<b>practise (v)</b>	<b>particular occupation or profession. practical (adj) practically (adv)</b>	مهارة
<b>sceptical (adj) sceptic (n) scepticism (n)</b>	<b>having doubts; not easily convinced.</b>	متشكك

## QUESTIONS

## أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية

- 1- What medical conditions may be possible to treat using complementary medicine?
- 2- Read the article again, and decide if these sentences are true or false. Correct the false sentences. SB: p15
  - a- Doctors and patients didn't use to be convinced that complementary forms of medicine work.
  - b- Nowadays, many doctors study complementary forms of treatment.
  - c- At the surgery mentioned in the article, the majority of patients found that the herbal remedy did not help them.
  - d- Complementary medicine can work as a replacement for immunisations or to treat malaria.
- 3- (Critical Thinking/Brain Storming) The article suggests that people's perception of complementary medicine has changed over time. Why do you think this is the case? SB: p15
- 4- "Complementary treatments should work alongside modern medicine, not against it." SB: p15 Explain this statement in two sentences, justifying your answer with examples from the article.
- 5- What were most doctors' feelings like regarding homoeopathy?
- 6- Who practices homoeopathy? Mention two parties.
- 7- What is the situation now regarding nonconventional (complementary) medicine?
- 8- Give a word from the text which means the same as "illness".
- 9- Can conventional medicine always be the only way to treat an ailment?
- 10- What did people in a surgery in London choose when they were offered choice between a herbal or a modern medicine? Why?
- 11- What is the opinion of the doctors mentioned in the text? Your answer should be based on two paragraphs.
- 12- Quote the sentence which indicates that doctors now deal with nonconventional treatment.
- 13- What is the problem with complementary medicine? Why can't it replace modern medicine?
- 14- What do the underlined words/pronouns in the above text refer to? Select 5 only.

## MODEL ANSWERS

- 1- Common complaints such as: insomnia, arthritis and migraines, anxiety, depression and certain allergies.
- 2- a- True b- True c- False. Fifty per cent of patients said it helped. d- False. Complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments.
- 3- People's perception of complementary medicine has changed because they found that these types of treatment worked with no side effects, they also found that conventional doctors were studying more and more about these non-conventional ways of treatment.



- 4- Doctors should use complementary treatments with the scientific ways they have learned. They should not neglect/ignore them nor depend on them all the time. They should use them to cure common complaints such as: insomnia, arthritis and migraines, anxiety, depression and certain allergies.
- 5- Most doctors used to be sceptical about the validity of homoeopathy and other forms of complementary medicine.
- 6- Private practitioners and conventional doctors practice homoeopathy.
- 7- The idea of complementary treatments is no longer an alien concept, it should work alongside modern medicine, and not against it.
- 8- Complaints.
- 9- No, because the writer mentions that non-conventional (complementary) medicine provides another option when conventional medicine does not address the problem adequately.
- 10- They chose the herbal remedy maybe because they were fed up with modern medicine.
- 11- One doctor said that he then considered homoeopathy to be a viable option for many different conditions. Another doctor said that he would always turn to conventional medical treatment first to ensure that no underlying condition was missed.
- 12- These days, many family doctors study complementary medicine alongside conventional treatments, and many complementary medicine consultants also have medical degrees.
- 13- Complementary medicine cannot be used for all medical treatments. It can never substitute for immunisations as it will not produce the antibodies needed to protect against childhood diseases. It also cannot be used to protect against malaria.
- 14- they :patients / who: a private practitioner / I: one doctor / It/it /It: complementary medicine  
I/my :one doctor / it :complementary treatment / it :modern medicine

**Q1 Match the phrases in the table with the correct meanings. One word is not needed. The first one is done for you. VOCABULARY- WB; p. 11**

المفردات

Acupuncture	homoeopathy	ailment
arthritis	immunisation	
malaria	allergies	migraine

- |                                                                                  |              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 a serious illness that is spread by mosquitoes                                 | malaria      |
| 2 a disease that causes pain and swelling in joints                              | arthritis    |
| 3 an illness or disease which is not very serious                                | ailment      |
| 4 giving a drug to protect against illness                                       | immunisation |
| 5 an extremely bad headache                                                      | migraine     |
| 6 a form of complementary medicine which uses thin needles                       | Acupuncture  |
| 7 conditions that make you ill when you eat, touch or breathe a particular thing | allergies    |

**Q2: Complete the sentences with words from exercise 1. The first one is done for you. WP; P11**

- |                                                                                             |              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 My grandfather has arthritis in his fingers, so he sometimes finds it difficult to write. |              |
| 2 to nuts and milk are becoming more common.                                                | Allergies    |
| 3 Many serious diseases can be prevented by , which helps the body to build antibodies.     | Immunisation |
| 4 Headaches and colds are common s, especially in winter.                                   | ailment      |
| 5 If you have a , the best thing to do is take some medicine and rest somewhere quiet.      | Migraine     |

## Are happier people healthier – and, if so, why?

Paragraph	ترجمة الفقرة
<p>It's normal to feel a bit blue from time to time. However, studies show that negative emotions can harm the body.</p> <p>Anger can also have harmful effects on health. When you see red, your blood pressure is raised and you can suffer from headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems. However, what about positive feelings and attitudes? Until recently, scientists had not investigated whether there is a link between positive feelings and good health.</p>	<p>من الطبيعي ان تشعر بالقليل من الحزن من حين لآخر .بالرغم من أن الدراسات اظهرت أن المشاعر السلبية يمكن أن تؤذي الجسم.</p> <p>يمكن ان يكون للغضب ايضا تأثيرات مؤذية على الصحة .عندما تغضب، يرتفع ضغط الدم لديك ويمكن أن تعاني من الصداع ومشاكل في النوم ومشاكل في الهضم .ولكن ماذا عن المشاعر والإتجاهات الإيجابية؟ لم يستطع العلماء حتى الآن التحري واكتشاف ما اذا كان هناك علاقة بين المشاعر الإيجابية والصحة الجيدة.</p>
<p>Then, in a study that had followed more than 6,000 men and women aged 25 to 74 for 20 years, researchers found that positivity reduced the risk of heart disease. Other factors influencing health included a supportive network of family and friends, and an optimistic outlook on life.</p>	<p>في دراسة تتبعت اكثر من 6000 رجل وامرأة تراوحت اعمارهم بين 25-74 لمدة 20 سنة .وجد الباحثون ان الايجابية قللت من خطر مرض القلب .ومن العوامل الاخرى التي تؤثر على صحة تشمل وجود شبكة من الاقارب والاصدقاء داعمين للشخص وتقاتل في الحياة.</p>
<p>The research showed that children who were more able to stay focused on a task, and who had a more positive attitude to life at age seven, were usually in better health 30 years later. The study has been controversial. Some health professionals believe that bad lifestyle choices, such as smoking or lack of exercise, are the reason for heart disease and other illnesses, and not an individual's attitude. The researchers, while agreeing, raise the question: why are people making bad lifestyle decisions? Do more optimistic people make better and healthier lifestyle choices?</p>	<p>أظهرت الدراسات أن الأطفال اللذين يملكون قدرة اكبر على التركيز على مهمة معينة والذين لديهم اتجاهات اكثر ايجابية في الحياة في عمر السابعة كانوا عادة في حالة صحية افضل بعد 30عام .لقد كانت الدراسة جدلية .يومن بعض المختصين في الصحة بأن الخيارات السيئة في اسلوب الحياة مثل التدخين وقلة التمارين هي السبب وراء أمراض القلب وامراض اخرى، وليس اتجاهاتهم الشخصية .تساءل الباحثون وهم موافقون على الفكرة عن السبب الذي يجعل الناس يتخذون قرارات تقود حياتهم للسلبية .هل يقوم الناس المتفائلون بإتخاذ خيارات حياتية افضل واكثر صحية؟</p>
<p>The researchers appreciate that not everyone's personal circumstances and environment make it possible to live without worry. However, they believe that if we teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.</p>	<p>يقدر العلماء انه ليس كل انسان عنده ظروف و بيئة تعطيه الفرصة ليعيش حياة بدون قلق . ولكنهم يؤمنون انه اذا تمكنا من تعليم الأطفال ان يطوروا تفكيراً ايجابيا وأن ينهضوا بعد كل سقوط ستحسن صحتهم بشكل عام في المستقبل.</p>

### Words must be saved

كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً							
word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Normal	طبيعي	suffer	يعاني	Network	شبكة	Appreciate	يقدر
Feel	يشعر	Headache	ألم رأس	Optimistic	متفائل	Circumstance	ظرف
Bit	قليل	digestive	هضم	Outlook	مظهر	Environment	بيئة
Negative	سلبى	Positive	إيجابي	focus	يركز	Worry	قلق
Emotion	مشاعر	Attitude	سلوك	Task	مهمة	Develop	يطور
Harm	يضر	Investigate	يحقق (في قضية)	Better	أفضل	Bounce	يرتد
Body	جسم	link	يصل (بشيء)	Controversial	جدلي خلاف	Quality	جودة
Anger	غضب	Reduce	يقلل	Professional	محترف	Improve	يطور
Effect	تأثير	Risk	مخاطر	Smoking	يدخن / دخان	Overall	كلي / إجمالي
Health	صحة	Factors	عوامل	Lack	نقص		

Blood	دم	Influence	يأثر	Reason	سبب		
Pressure	ضغط	Include	يتضمن	Individual	فردى		
Raise	يرتفع	Supportive	داعم	Decision	قرار		

Words	Meanings (E)	Words
feel blue	to feel sad.	يشعر بالحزن
see red	to be angry.	يغضب
white elephant	something that has cost a lot of money but has no useful purpose.	مكلف بدون فائدة
have the green light	to have or give permission to go ahead with something or for something to happen.	يسمح / يُسمح له
red-handed	in the act of doing something wrong.	يرتكب حماقة يرتكب
out of the blue (adj)	apparently from nowhere; unexpectedly.	بشكل مفاجيء
bounce back	to start to be successful again after a difficult time.	النهوض بعد الفشل
focus on focus (n) focused (adj)	to direct your attention or effort at something specific.	يركز على
setback (n)	a problem that delays or stops progress, or makes a situation worse.	فشل / إخفاق
raise (v)	a question to bring up a problem or cast doubt on something.	يرفع/يسأل/يربي
optimistic(adj)optimism(n)optimist (n)	believing that good things will happen in the future.	التفاؤل

## QUESTIONS

## أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية

- 1- Do you ever feel yourself getting angry? What kind of things can make you angry?
- 2- Do you think that feeling angry is bad for you?
- 3- What are the possible effects of anger and stress on someone's health? SB
- 4- What is controversial about the researchers' study? SB
- 5- What is your opinion of the researchers' findings? SB
- 6- (Critical Thinking) Read the quotation by Thomas Carlyle "He who has health has hope; and he who has hope, has everything". Do you agree with it? Why/Why not?
- 7- What do the underlined words in the above text refer to? Pick five only.
- 8- How can we improve our children's overall health in the future?
- 9- Quote the sentence which indicates that childhood attitude is almost similar to your attitude when you grow up.
- 10- What do the underlined words in the text refer to?

## MODEL ANSWERS

- 1- Yes, sometimes I get so angry. For example, when my parents ask me to go to bed early.
- 2- Yes, of course. I believe it is bad for me.
- 3- Anger can also have harmful effects on health. When you see red, your blood pressure is raised and you can suffer from headaches, sleep problems and digestive problems.
- 4- The study has been controversial. Some health professionals believe that bad lifestyle choices, such as smoking or lack of exercise, are the reason for heart disease and other illnesses, and not an individual's attitude.
- 5- I think he is right. When people have bad life conditions when they are young, his/her future will probably be uncomfortable because childhood situations always affect the personality of human beings.
- 6- Yes, I agree. Because healthy life leads to success, and when you are successful, you enjoy everything, especially work.
- 7- That/ a study    who / who children    they / The researchers    their/ children
- 8- If we teach children to develop positive thinking, and to 'bounce back' after a setback, these qualities will improve their overall health in the future.
- 9- The research showed that children who were more able to stay focused on a task, and who had a more positive attitude to life at age seven, were usually in better health 30 years later.
- 10- emotions=feelings / scientists=researchers / optimistic= believing that good things will happen.

### SB: p.17 Ex.4

**A- What feeling does each idiom indicate? Use these: (happiness/sadness/fear/anger)**

1- feel a bit blue ..... 2- see red .....

**B- What do the underlined/bolded colour idioms mean?**

1- We've got **the green light** to go ahead with our project!

2 Luckily, the police arrived and the thief was caught **red-handed**.

3 I was shocked when I heard the news. It came completely **out of the blue**.

4 Nobody goes to the new private sports club. The building is **a white elephant**.

**Answers**

A: 1- sadness 2- anger.

B: 1- got permission 2- in the act of doing something wrong 3- unexpectedly

## Health in Jordan: A report

<p><b>Introduction</b></p> <p>Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. This is largely due to the country's commitment to making healthcare for all a top priority. Advances in education, economic conditions, sanitation, clean water, diet and housing have made our community healthier</p>	<p>مقدمة: تعد الصحة في الأردن من الأفضل في الشرق الأوسط. هذا بالأغلب يعزى لإلتزام الدولة بالتأمين الصحي لكل كأولوية. التطورات في التعليم والأوضاع الإقتصادية والتصرف المجاري والماء النظيف والحماية والإسكان كل ذلك جعل مجتمعا أكثر صحية.</p>
<p><b>A. Healthcare centres</b></p> <p>As a result of careful planning, the number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years. More than 800 different kinds of healthcare centres have been built, as well as 188 dental clinics. In 2012 CE, 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunised, thanks to immunisation teams that had been working towards this goal for several years. Although there were remote areas of the country where people had been without consistent access to electricity and safe water, almost 99 per cent of the country's population now has access.</p>	<p>وكنتيجة للتخطيط الحذر، تطور عدد الخدمات الصحية بشكل سريع في السنوات الأخيرة و تم بناء أكثر من 800 مركز صحي وأيضاً 188 عيادة لطب الأسنان. في عام 2012 98 بالمئة من الأطفال الأردنيين تم تلقيحهم بشكل تام بفضل فرق التطعيم والتي كانت ولا زالت تسعى وراء هذا الهدف لعدة سنوات. بالرغم من وجود مناطق نائية في الدولة والتي يكون بها الناس بدون اتصال ثابت بالكهرباء والماء النقي فإن الآن حوالي 99 بالمئة من سكان الدولة تتوفر لهم تلك الأشياء.</p>
<p><b>B. Hospitals</b></p> <p>Although the country has been focusing mainly on improving its primary healthcare facilities, it has not neglected its advanced medical facilities. The reputation of Jordanian doctors has spread in the region, and now many more patients come to Jordan for open heart surgery. In Jordan, the open heart surgery programme started in 1970 CE in Amman.</p>	<p>بالرغم من ان الدولة كانت تركز بشكل رئيسي على تطوير وتحسين المنشآت الصحية الأساسية، فإنها لم تهمل المنشآت الطبية المتطورة الخاصة بها. فلقد انتشرت هذه السمعة الطيبة عن الأطباء الأردنيين في المنطقة والعديد من المرضى يأتون إلى الأردن لعمليات القلب المفتوح. بدأ برنامج عمليات القلب المفتوح في عمان في عام 1970</p>
<p><b>C. Life expectancy</b></p> <p>The life expectancy figures show that Jordan's healthcare system is successful. In 1965 CE, the average Jordanian's life expectancy was age 50. In 2012 CE, this average life expectancy had risen to 73.5. According to UNICEF statistics, between 1981 CE and 1991 CE, Jordan's infant mortality rates declined more rapidly than anywhere else in the world – from 70 deaths per 1,000 births in 1981 CE to only 32 deaths per 1,000 births in 2014 CE.</p>	<p>إن ارقام متوسط العمر الافتراضي توضح ان النظام الصحي الأردني ناجح. ففي عام 1965 ميلادي كان معدل متوسط العمر الافتراضي في الاردن حوالي 50 عاما. في عام 2012 كان هذا المعدل للعمر الافتراضي قد ارتفع لحوالي 73.5. طبقاً لإحصاءات منظمة اليونيسيف فإنه بين عام 1981 و عام 1991 انخفض عدد وفيات المواليد بشكل سريع لم يُشهد في أي مكان في العالم – من 70 1000 كان يتوفى في 1981 الي 32 وفاة فقط من كل 1000 في عام 2014</p>
<p><b>Conclusion</b></p> <p>The low infant mortality rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system, have been contributing factors to Jordan's healthy population growth, which will result in a strong work force with economic benefits for the whole country.</p>	<p>ان المعدل المنخفض لوفيات الاطفال والنظام الصحي الممتاز كان من العوامل المساهمة في الزيادة السكانية الصحية والتي ينتج عنها قوى عاملة قوية وفوائد اقتصادية لكل البلد.</p>

**Words must be saved**

**كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً**

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Introduction	مقدمة	Clean	نظيف	Remote	بعيد / نائية	Average	معدل
Condition	شرط / حالة	Diet	حمية	Area	منطقة	Risen	ارتفع
Among	بين	Community	مجتمع	Consistent	متسق	Statistics	إحصائيات
Middle	أوسط	Planning	تخطيط	Electricity	كهرباء	Infant	رضيع
East	الشرق	Services	خدمات	Population	كثافة سكانية	Mortality	معدل وفيات
Largely	بشكل ضخم	Increasing	بشكل متزايد	mainly	بشكل رئيسي	Rates	معدلات
Due	بسبب	Rapidly	سريع	Primary	أساسي	Decline	يرفض
Country	منطقة	Dental	أسنان	Facilities	مباني	Death	وفيات
Commitment	إلتزام	clinic	عيادة	Neglected	مهمل / متروك	Birth	ولادة
Healthcare	الرعاية الصحية	Immunised	منيع / حصين	Medical	طبي	Conclusion	خاتمة / ملخص
Top	قمة	Immunisation	تحصين	Reputation	سمعة	Low	منخفض
priority	أولوية	Team	فريق	Spread	ينتشر	Contribute	يساهم
Advance	متقدم	Toward	للأمام	Region	منطقة	Factors	عوامل
Economic	اقتصاد	Goal	هدف	Expectancy	توقع	Growth	نمو
Sanitation	النظام الصحي	Several	العديد	Figures	أشخاص	benefits	فوائد

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربية
commitment (n) commit (v) committed (adj)	a promise to do something or to behave in a particular way.	إلتزام
healthcare (n)	the prevention or treatment of illness by doctors, dentists, psychologists, etc.	الرعاية الصحية
life expectancy (n) expect (v) expectation	the length of time that a person or animal is expected to live.	متوسط العمر المتوقع
mortality (n) mortal (n and adj) mortally (adv)	death, especially on a large scale (e.g. infant mortality); the rate of deaths that occur (mortality rate).	الوفيات
reputation (n) repute (v)	the common opinion that people have about someone or something.	السمعة
decline (v) decline (n)	to decrease in quantity or importance.	ينخفض

**QUESTIONS**

**أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية**

- 1- Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. Why do you think this is the case? Give examples.
- 2- Write down the sentence which shows the sectors that helped in making Jordan healthier.

- 3- What is the link between the introduction and the conclusion in this report?
- 4- Is the language formal or informal? How can you tell?
- 5- What is the title of the report?
- 6- What is the purpose of the sub-headings before different sections?
- 7- What made the number of healthcare services increase in Jordan over the past years?
- 8- What does the underlined word “dental” in the text mean?
- 9- What are the result of careful planning?
- 10- What is the achievement of the immunisation teams?
- 11- Did the government forget about the advanced healthcare facilities? What are the consequences of that?
- 12- What is the specific disease that Jordanian doctors are very professional at?
- 13- Give one example of life expectancy rate that was improved?
- 14- What led the Jordanian population to rise? Give a reason from the text and another from your knowledge.
- 15-(Critical Thinking/ Brain Storming) What illnesses are children in Jordan vaccinated against?
- 16- What are the underlined words/pronouns in the text refer to?

## MODEL ANSWERS

- 1- Health conditions in Jordan are among the best in the Middle East. This is largely due to the country’s commitment to making healthcare for all a top priority. The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years and 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunized. Life expectancy had risen to 73.5 and infant mortality rates have fallen down.
- 2- Advances in education, economic conditions, sanitation, clean water, diet and housing have made our community healthier.
- 3- ‘Health conditions are among the best in the Middle East’ and ‘Advances ... have made our community healthier’ links with ‘excellent healthcare system’ and ‘contributing factors to Jordan’s healthy population growth’.
- 4- The language is formal. There are no contractions; the sentences are quite long, with relative pronouns, etc.; the vocabulary is formal; there are linking expressions such as: As a result of, According to and Although; the statistics included add to the formality.
- 5- Health in Jordan: A report.
- 6- They tell the reader what the section will be about. If it is a very long report, they are very useful in helping the reader to find particular pieces of information and making the text easier to read.
- 7- The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years as a result of careful planning.
- 8- Dental means: relating to the teeth.
- 9- The number of healthcare services has been increasing rapidly over the past years. More than 800 different kinds of healthcare centres have been built, as well as 188 dental clinics. In 2012 CE, 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunized. Almost 99 per cent of the country’s population now has access to electricity and safe water.
- 10- 98 per cent of Jordanian children were fully immunised, thanks to immunisation teams that had been working towards this goal for several years.
- 11- The country has not neglected its advanced medical facilities. The reputation of Jordanian doctors has spread in the region, and now many more patients come to Jordan for open heart surgery.
- 12- Jordanian doctors are very professional at open heart surgery. Many more patients come to Jordan for it.
- 13- Jordan’s infant mortality rates declined more rapidly than anywhere else in the world.
- 14- The low infant mortality rate, as well as the excellent healthcare system, have been contributing factors to Jordan’s healthy population growth.
- 15- Children in Jordan are vaccinated against tetanus, polio, measles, and smallpox.
- 16-That: immunisation teams /where: remote areas of the country /its/it /: the country

<p><b>A- A growing problem</b> In many countries, an increasing number of young people and adults are overweight or even obese. One reason for this is the growing popularity of fast food, which didn't use to be as common as it is now. (1) Another big factor is lack of exercise. People would often walk to school or work, but these days many more of us drive. Modern technology has also played its part; we spend more and more time focusing on computer screens. Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.</p>	<p>مشكلة في تزايد يوجد في العديد من الدول عدد متزايد من الصغار والبالغين الذين يعانون من السمنة او حتى زيادة الوزن المفرطة. يعد شيوع الطعام السريع (الجاهز) والذي لم يكن شائعاً في السابق احد الأسباب. والعامل الكبير الثاني هو قلة التمارين. كان الناس في السابق يمشون إلى المدرسة أو العمل ولكن هذه الأيام العديد منا يستقل السيارة. وقد لعبت التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورها الكبير في ذلك فنقضي وقتاً أكثر وأكثر محدقين في شاشات الكمبيوتر. لم يحلم احد في التسوق عبر الإنترنت قبل اختراع الانترنت ولكن الآن يمكننا شراء كل شيء بدون مغادرة الأريكة.</p>
<p><b>B- Time to listen</b> Health experts have been warning about this trend for years, and their advice is clear. Adults should aim to exercise for at least two and a half hours every week; for children and teenagers the target should be at least an hour a day. This might not sound very much. However, recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this. (2) School children are less physically active than they used to be. Girls in particular often dislike PE. This can lead to serious health problems.</p>	<p>حان الوقت للإصغاء: لطالما حذر خبراء الصحة من هذا الميول ونصيحتهم واضحة. يجب على البالغين التمرن لساعتين ونصف في الأسبوع على الأقل، اما الأطفال والمراهقين فيجب عليهم التمرن لساعة يوميا على الأقل. وقد يبدو هذا ليس بالكثير. لكن الدراسات تثبت أن 50 بالمئة من البريطانيين لا يتمكنون من ذلك. إن اطفال المدارس اقل نشاطا جسديا مما كانوا عليه في السابق. تكره الفتيات خصوصا حصص اللياقة البدنية/الرياضة. قد يؤدي هذا إلى مشاكل صحية خطيرة.</p>
<p><b>C- It's good for you!</b> Experts recommend a mixture of activities. These should include moderate exercise, such as fast walking, and more strenuous exercise, like running. (3) They also advise exercise that strengthens the muscles, for example sit-ups. The more muscle we build, the more calories we burn, and the fitter we become. In addition, exercise is a great way to cope with stress. In a recent study, patients who had been suffering from depression reported a great improvement after increased physical activity.</p>	<p>إنه لمن الجيد بالنسبة لك: يوصي الخبراء بالتنوع في النشاطات. ويجب ان تتضمن نشاطات متوسطة مثل المشي السريع ونشاطات أكثر إجهاد مثل الركض. وينصحون ايضا بتمارين تقوي العضلات مثل الضغط/او شد العضلات. حيث تبني عضلات اكثر فإنك تحرق سعرات حرارية أكثر ونصبح أكثر لياقة. بالإضافة إلى أن الرياضة طريقة رائعة للتعامل مع الضغط والإجهاد. ففي دراسة حديثة تبين أن المرضى الذين كانوا يعانون من الإكتئاب اعربو عن تحسن عظيم بعد زيادة النشاطات الجسدية لديهم.</p>
<p><b>D- Useful tips</b> Of course, this raises a question: how can I manage to fit in all this extra exercise? The best way is to build it into our daily lives so that it becomes a routine. (4) It doesn't have to take much extra time. You could get off the bus one stop earlier than usual, or stand up when you're on the phone! Most importantly, we should find a sport that we enjoy doing. That way, we will all become fitter, healthier and happier.</p>	<p>نصائح مفيدة: بالطبع هذا يجعلنا نساءل كيف يمكننا ان نتدبر امور كل هذه التمارين الإضافية؟ إن افضل طريقة هي جعل التمارين اساسية في حياتنا اليومية بحيث تتبج روتين. وليس بالضرورة أن تأخذ وقتاً إضافياً. يمكنك النزول من الباص قبل الوصول إلى وجهتك أو تقف على قدميك وأنت تتكلم في الهاتف! أو الأكثر أهمية أن نجد رياضة نحبها. بهذه الطريقة سنصبح كلنا لائقون جسديا وأكثر صحة وأكثر سعادة.</p>



**Words must be saved**

**كلمات يجب حفظها غيباً**

word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى	word	المعنى
Adult	كبير في السن	Leaving	يغادر	Lead	يقود	Addition	بالإضافة
Overweight	وزن زائد	sofa	الأريكة	Serious	خطير	Great	عظيم
Obese	بدين	Experts	خبراء	Problem	مشكلة	Cope	تغلب
Popularity	شعبية	warn	يحذر	Recommend	يوصي	Stress	توتر
Fast food	الوجبات السريعة	Trend	اتجاه	Mixture	خليط	Depression	اكتئاب
Common	شائع	Advice	ينصح	Moderate	معتدل	Reported	ابلع
Drive	يقود	Aim	يهدف	Strenuous	شاق	Improvement	تحسينات
Modern	حديث	Target	هدف	muscle	عضلة	Physical	فيزيائي
Screen	شاشة	Sound	صوت ( يبدو )	Calories	سعات حرارية	activity	أنشطة
Invented	يخترع	Manages	استطاع	Burn	يحرق		
Nobody	لا أحد	PE Physical Education	حصة اللياقة البدنية	Fitter	ارشق		

Word	English Meaning	المعنى بالعربية
obese (adj) obesity (n)	extremely fat, in a way that is dangerous to your health.	السمنة المفرطة التخمة
cope with (phrasal v)	to deal successfully with, or handle, a situation.	يتكيف مع
strenuous (adj)	using or needing a lot of effort.	مجد/متعب

**QUESTIONS**

**أسئلة الفقرة والإجابات النموذجية**

- 1- According to the article, what are the main reasons for higher rates of obesity?
- 2- What is the minimum amount of exercise recommended for someone in your age group?
- 3- Do most British people get enough exercise? Which sentence in the article tells you this?
- 4- Guess the meaning of the highlighted word “strenuous” in paragraph C. Then check in a dictionary.
- 5- The author suggests some ways of including exercise in our normal lives. Give two examples from the article.
- 6- (Critical Thinking/Brain Storming) In your opinion, Are people in Jordan overweight? Do they share the same reasons with other countries? Give examples from your own experience to explain your answers.
- 7- (Critical Thinking/Brain Storming) Paragraphs C and D: Think of some simple ways you and other people you know could increase your physical activity. Write two or three ideas.
- 8- What do the underlined pronouns and words in the text above refer to?
- 9- (Critical Thinking/Brain Storming) The article suggests getting off the bus just before you reach your final destination and walk. Do you think this is a good idea to exercise without wasting time? Write your opinion and suggest three more ways to achieve this.
- 10- Quote the sentence which indicates that you can buy things while lying on the couch?
- 11- What is the advice of experts for people? Write it down in details please.
- 12- What do girls usually refuse and what does that lead to?

- 13- Give two examples of exercise.  
 14- How can we cope with stress and depression?

## Model answers

- 1- One reason for this is the growing popularity of fast food. Another big factor is lack of exercise. Modern technology has also played its part; we spend more and more time focusing on computer screens.  
 2- The target exercise should be at least an hour a day for children and teenagers.  
 3- Recent research shows that less than 50% of the British population manages this.  
 4- Needing or using a lot of physical or mental effort or energy. (According to CALD)  
 5- You could get off the bus one stop earlier than usual, or stand up when you're on the phone.  
 6- Yes, most of people in Jordan are overweight. They share the same reasons with other countries and they have their own reasons such as: having fatty foods and drinking fuzzy drinks.  
 7- We can walk, play football, run and go to gym.  
 8- which: fast food /its: Modern technology their :Health experts they: School children  
 These activities They Experts that exercise It exercise that a sport  
 9- Getting off the bus just before you reach is a good idea but I have many other ways. For example, you can go to work walking if your work is near, or just go shopping walking also. Walking around with friends also is a great idea.  
 10- Before the Internet was invented, nobody had dreamt of online shopping, but now we can buy almost anything without leaving the sofa.  
 11- Health experts have been warning about this trend for years, and their advice is clear. Adults should aim to exercise for at least two and a half hours every week; for children and teenagers the target should be at least an hour a day.  
 12- Girls in particular often dislike PE. This can lead to serious health problems.  
 13- Moderate exercise and strenuous exercise.  
 14- We can deal with stress and depression by exercising.

### AB: p.12 Ex.6

**viable / alien / conventional / sceptical / complementary**

- 1- I don't really believe that story – I'm very ..... sceptical  
 2- Doctors often treat infections with antibiotics; that is the ..... approach. conventional  
 3- Medicines that are not the normal, traditionally accepted treatments are known as ..... complementary  
 4- Another way of saying that something could be successful is to say it is ..... viable  
 5 If something seems very strange, we sometimes say it is ..... alien

### AB: p.12 Ex.7

**conventional medicine / produce antibodies / children and teenagers / better and healthier  
 lifestyle choices / suffer from health problems / relax and get some exercise**

- 1- A good way to cope with stress is to work extra hard. No, it isn't. You should try to  
 2- Complementary medicine can be used to immunise people. No, it can't. You can immunize yourself using  
 3- Optimistic people make bad lifestyle choices. No, they don't. They make  
 4- Seeing red has positive effects on your health. No, it doesn't. You often

#### Answers

- 1-relax and get some exercise 2- conventional medicine 3- better and healthier lifestyle choices 4- suffer from health problems.

## Be used to / used to

**be used to = (is/am/are/was/were + used to)**

**Uses (Functions):** to describe things that are familiar or customary.

- We've lived in the city a long time, so we're **used to the traffic**. (be used to + n)
- I didn't like getting up early, but **I'm used to it** now. (be used to + pronoun)
- She's lived in the UK for a year. She's **used to speaking** English now. (be used to + ing)

## **Used to + infinitive.**

**Uses (Functions):** to describe **past habits** or past states that now have **changed**.

- My mother **used to buy** my clothes, but now I choose my own.
- She **used to be** a teacher, but now she's retired.
- I **used to like** cartoon films when I was younger. These days I prefer action films.

## **SB: p.15 Ex.6**

- 1- I **didn't use to / am used to** understand English, but now I do.
- 2- My cousin has lived in Lebanon for a year. He says he **is used to / didn't use to** living there now.
- 3- My family and I **are used to / used to** go camping once a month, but we stopped doing that when we moved to the city.
- 4- Joining a gym can be very tiring at first if you **used to / aren't used to** doing much exercise.
- 5- When I was young, I **used to / am used to** go fishing

### **Answers:**

- 1- didn't use to 2- is used to 3- used to 4- aren't used to 5- used to

## **AB: p.11 Ex.3**

### **be used to / use to / not be used to / used to**

- 1- We needed warm clothes when we went to London. We weren't ..... the cold weather.
- 2- My grandparents didn't ..... send emails when they were my age.
- 3- Rashed ..... go swimming every morning, but now he doesn't.
- 4- We always go to the market across the street, so we ..... eating fresh vegetables.
- 5- Please slow down. I ..... walking so fast!
- 6- When you were younger, did you ..... play in the park?

### **Answers:**

- 1- used to 2- use to 3- used to 4- are used to 5- am not used to 6- use to.

**AB: p.11 Ex.4**

- 1- I **used to / am used to** go shopping in the local supermarket, but it closed two years ago, so now I have to drive into town to shop.
- 2- There **didn't use to / wasn't used to** be so much pollution, but these days it is a global problem.
- 3- I think television **used to / is used to be** better than it is now. Most of the programmes these days are just reality TV.
- 4- Most Jordanians **are used to / used to** the hot weather that we have in summer.
- 5- There **was used to / used to** be a lot more wild animals in the past, but they are becoming rare nowadays.
- 6- Salma has been practising the oud really hard and she **is now used to / now used to** playing it.

**Answers:**

- 1- used to 2- didn't use to 3- used to 4- are used to 5- used to 6- is now used to.

**AB: p.12 Ex.5**

- 1- When I was a student, I ..... (work) very hard. I ..... (get up) very early and study alone before my lectures, attend lectures all day, and then come home to study some more!
- 2- Are you ..... (live) in Jordan yet? You've only been here for two months.
- 3 When I was a child, my grandmother ..... (make) cakes for us all the time, and I liked helping her a lot.
- 4- My grandfather retired a month ago. He isn't ..... (have) nothing to do all day. He says he needs a project to concentrate on.
- 5- I just got glasses this week, and I'm not ..... (wear) them yet, so I'm still having difficulty.

**Answers:**

- 1- used to work - used to get up 2-used to living 3- used to make 4- used to having 5- used to wearing.

## Past Perfect Continuous

**Form:** S +had +been+ V(ing) + O.

- (+) He had been playing football.
- (-) He had not been playing football.
- (?) Had he been playing football?

### Uses (Functions):

**1. We use this structure to talk about actions or situations that were happening up to a specific moment in the past.**

### **2. Actions which were repeated**

Fino had been having sleepless nights and feeling very nervous

1. Ahmad was absolutely exhausted because he **had been working** all night. (be, work)
2. The professors **had been discussing** the topic before the student came. (be, discuss)
3. By the time the bus arrived, we had been waiting for an hour.
4. Ali **had been thinking** about his friend when he received a text from him. (be, think) -

### **Key words :**

**All+ time, every time, since, for, less , few, when, by**

### **Exercise:**

1. The ground was wet because it had ----- all night. (be, rain)
2. Maher felt tired after he ----- a project all day. (be, do)
3. Ahmad was upset because he had----- in the contest. (not , be, participate)
4. The baby's eyes were red because he had ----- for 2 hours. (be, cry)
5. Sami had ----- his car before his father sent him a message. (be, fix)
6. What had you ----- before you played football? (be, read)
7. After Mazen ----- the article, he slept. (be, write)
8. Amjad got nervous because he ----- all morning. (not, be, study)
9. The students had ----- for the competition before the principal came. (be, prepare)
10. My brother heard the bad news because he had ----- . (not, be, sleep)

### **Answers:**

1. been raining
2. had been doing
3. not been participating
4. been crying
5. been fixing
6. been reading
7. had been writing
8. had not been studying
9. been preparing
10. not been sleeping

(see, know, hear, realize, be, recognize, own, have, belong, seem)

(just, already, several, times, twice, never, ever, first, perfectly, successfully, nobody, no one)

1. They had been ..... chess an hour when I came.(play)
2. They had ..... playing chess an hour when I came.(be)
3. They had ..... chess an hour when I came.(be,play)
4. They ..... chess an hour when I came.(be,play)
5. We had ..... with each other for a long time.(be,communicate)

Think ----- of / about

She ..... of going to London for three weeks when I arrived.(think)

Past simple	For /since ,every,all	Had been +v+ing
Past simple	عدم وجود ظرف دال على الاستمرار	Had + V3
Past simple	Already ,twice,never,yet	Had + V3
Past simple	see,know,hear,realize,,be,recognize	Had + V3

1. Amjad got nervous because he ----- all morning. (study)
2. Before we got there, the thief ..... (escape)
3. I was too late.The play ..... already ..... .(start)
4. He was bored.He .....that film several times.(see)

### Exercise:

- 1-We ..... (be/sleep) for 12 hours when he woke us up.
- 2-They ..... (be/wait) at the station for 90 minutes when the train finally arrived.
- 3-We ..... (be/look for) her ring for two hours and then we found it in the bathroom.
- 4-I ..... (be/not / walk) for a long time, when it suddenly began to rain.
- 5-How long ..... (be/learn / she) English before she went to London?
- 6- Frank caught the flu because he ..... (be/sing) in the rain too long.
- 7- He ..... (be/drive) less than an hour when he ran out of petrol.
- 8- They were very tired in the evening because they .....(be/help) on the farm all day.
- 9- I ..... (be/not / work) all day; so I wasn't tired and went to the disco at night.
- 10- They ..... (be/cycle) all day so their legs were sore in the evening.

### Answers:

- 1- had been sleeping 2- had been waiting 3- had been looking for 4- had not been walking 5- had she been learning 6- had been singing 7- had been driving 8- had been helping 9- hadn't been working 10-

Study the following sentence and answer the question that follows.

I had been getting up at five o'clock all week, so on Friday I was completely exhausted.

What is the function of using the past perfect continuous in the above sentence?

A repeated action over a period of time before another action in the past.

**SB: p.19 Ex.5**

1- A: When I saw you yesterday, you looked really tired.

B: Yes, I ..... for half an hour. (run)

2- My mother lost her purse yesterday. She ..... in the market; she must have put it down somewhere and left it there. (shop)

3- I made my mother a cup of tea. She was hot and tired; she..... all afternoon for a special family dinner. (cook)

Answers:

1-B: had been running 2- had been shopping 3- had been cooking.

**SB: p.19 Ex.6**

Hind (1) **has / had** been working very hard for several weeks before she did her final exams. When the results were published, she was delighted to learn that she (2) **has / had** passed. She (3) **has/ had** done extremely well. She (4) **phoned / had phoned** her parents from the college. They (5) **were / had been** waiting for her call all morning. When she arrived home an hour later, there was a surprise for her. For several weeks, her parents (6) **planned / had been planning** a special weekend away to the Jerash Festival. They (7) **have / had** managed to make it a surprise for Hind, even though they (8) **were / had** been using the family computer to make all the arrangements! Hind was delighted. She (9) **has / had** been talking about the Jerash Festival for months; and now the whole family was going! It was a wonderful graduation present.

Answers:

1- had 2- had 3- had 4- phoned 5- had been 6- had been planning 7- had 8 had been 9- had been.

**SB: p.17 Ex.7 SB: p.23 Ex.9** يرجى التدريب على شكل الكتابة الصوتية والعكس

الكلمة	الكتابة الصوتية	الكلمة	الكتابة الصوتية	الكلمة	الكتابة الصوتية
Importance	/ɪm'pɔ:təns/	Calm	/kɑ:m/	Audience	/'ɔ:diəns/
School	/sku:l/	Outpatient	/aʊ'peɪfənt/	Healthy	/'helθi/
Exercise	/'eksəsaɪz/	Fluently	/flʊə'nli/	Carrying	/'kæriɪŋ/
Angry	/'æŋgri/	Technology	/tek'nɒlədʒi/		

# Action Pack 12

المستوى الثالث

المنهاج الجديد

الوحدة الرابعة 4 Unit

Success stories

قصص نجاح

Teacher: Sohaib Yaser 0788650494



## SB: p.28 The importance of Islamic achievements in history

<p><b>Jabir ibn Hayyan (born 722 CE, died 815 CE)</b>          The Arab world has many famous chemists in its history, but the person who is known as the founder of chemistry is probably Jabir ibn Hayyan. He is most well-known for the beginning of the production of sulphuric acid. He also built a set of scales which changed the way in <u>which</u> chemists weighed items in a laboratory: his scales could weigh items over 6,000 times smaller than a kilogram.</p>	<p>جابر ولكن تاريخه، في المشهورين الكيميائيين من العديد العربي العالم يمتلك: حيان ابن جابر المعروف الشخص إنه. الكيمياء علم مؤسس بأنه والمعروف المتوقع الشخص هو حيان بن التي الطريقة غيرت مقاييس مجموعة بنى الذي وهو. الكبريتيك حامض بإنتاج بدأ قد بأنه جيداً ب الكيلوغرام من اقل اجساما يزن ان مقياسه يستطيع: المختبر في المواد الكيميائيون بها يزن مره. 6000</p>
<p><b>Ali ibn Nafi' (Ziryab) (born 789 CE, died 857 CE)</b>          Ali ibn Nafi' is also known as 'Ziryab' (or 'Blackbird', because of his beautiful voice). He was a gifted pupil of a famous musician from Baghdad, and it was his talent for music that led him to Cordoba in the ninth century CE. He was the guest of the Umayyad ruler there. He is the person who established the first music school in the world in Cordoba, Al-Andalus, teaching musical harmony and composition. He revolutionised musical theory, and is also the person who introduced the oud to Europe.</p>	<p>على بن نافع( زرياب : ) علي بن نافع معروف ايضا بزرياب او الطائر الأسود بسبب صوته الجميل. لقد كان طالبا موهوبا عند موسيقي من بغداد، ولقد قاده موهبته الموسيقية إلى قرطبة في القرن التاسع. لقد كان ضيف الحاكم الأموي هناك. وهو الشخص الذي اسس اول مدرسة موسيقية في العالم في قرطبة، الأندلس، يُدرس التناغم الموسيقي وتأليف الموسيقى. لقد احدث تغييراً جذرياً في النظرية الموسيقية وهو الشخص الذي ادخل العود لأوروبا.</p>
<p><b>Fatima al-Fihri (born early 9th century, died 880 CE)</b>          Fatima al-Fihri was the daughter of a wealthy businessman. She used her father's inheritance to build a learning centre in Fez, Morocco. This learning centre became Morocco's top university, and it is where many students from all over the world come to study. Moreover, it was Fatima's sister, Mariam, who supervised the building of the Andalus Mosque, which was not far from the learning centre.</p>	<p>فاطمة الفهري هي ابنة رجل اعمال ثري. استخدمت ميراث والدها لبناء مركز تعليمي في فز-المغرب. هذا المركز التعليمي اصبح الجامعة الأولى في المغرب حيث يتهافت الكثير من الطلاب للدراسة فيها من مختلف انحاء العالم. وعلاوة على ذلك فقد اشرفت اختها مريم على بناء مسجد الأندلس والذي لم يكن بعيداً عن مركز التعلم هذا.</p>
<p><b>Al-Kindi (born around 801 CE, died 873 CE)</b>          Al-Kindi was a physician, philosopher, mathematician, chemist, musician and astronomer – a true polymath. He made ground-breaking discoveries in many of these fields, but it is probably his work in arithmetic and geometry that has made him most famous.</p>	<p>الكندي: كان الكندي طبيبا وفيلسوفاً وعالم رياضيات وكيميائياً، موسيقياً وعالماً في الفلك. لقد كان متعدد المعرفة بحق. لقد احرز اكتشافات وسعت الافاق في اغلب هذه المجالات. ولكن عمله في علم الحساب والهندسة جعله مشهوراً جداً.</p>

Words	Meanings (A)	Meanings (E)
علم الحساب	the branch of mathematics concerned with numerical calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division	arithmetic (n)
علم الهندسة	the branch of mathematics concerned with the properties, relationships and measurement of points, lines, curves and surfaces	geometry (n)
مختص بالرياضيات	a person who studies Mathematics to a very complex level	mathematician
فيلسوف	someone who studies and writes philosophy professionally, or an undergraduate student of Philosophy	philosopher(n)
طبيب	someone qualified to practise medicine, especially one who specialises in diagnosis and treatment	physician (n)
شخص موسوعي	someone who has a lot of knowledge about many different subjects	polymath (n)
موهبة	special ability	talent
مؤسس	the person who starts something new	founder
ميزان	an instrument to measure weight	sacle
مختبر	A room for scientific experiments	laboratory

## QUESTIONS

- Quote the sentence which indicates that an Arab musician introduced the oud to Europe.
- Do you think that it was easier or more difficult in those days to reach such high levels of achievement in comparison with the present day? Give a reason for your opinion.
- Who is probably the founder of chemistry?
- What was Al-Kindi?
- What is Jabir ibn Hayyan famous for?
- What does the bolded pronoun “which” in the first paragraph refer to?
- Who supervised the building of the Andalus Mosque?
- What is the noble thing that Fatima al-Fihri did?
- What made Al-Kindi most famous?
- What does the underlined/bolded word “mosque” mean?
- Why was Ali ibn Nafi’ called “Ziryab (or ‘Blackbird’)”?
- (Critical Thinking) Arab scholars have made a tremendous contribution to the world. Suggest two other discoveries that was made by other Arab or Muslim scientists, use your research engine to find some of these.
- Which successful person has influenced you the most in your life and why?
- Which person in the previous text do you think was the most successful and why?
- Do you think that there is anything positive to be done by you to make you famous and influence the world? What would it be?

\*\*\*\*\*

- Jabir Ibn Hayyan had many of the most important achievements. Write down these achievements.

- A. Founder of chemistry  
 B. The production of sulphuric acid.  
 C. He built a set of scales.
2. Jabir Ibn Hayyan built a set of scales which changed the way in which chemists weighed items in laboratory. In what way it helped them. His scales could weigh items over 6,000 times smaller than a kilogram.
3. Why was Ali Ibn Nafi" called the „blackbird“?  
 Because of his beautiful voice.
4. Ali Ibn Nafi" had many of the most important achievements. Write down these achievements.  
 A. He established the first music school in the world in Cordoba.  
 B. He introduced the oud to Europe.
5. How did Fatima al-Fihri use her father"s inheritance?  
 She used her father"s inheritance to build a learning centre in Fez, Morocco.
6. What is AL-Kindi famous for?  
 His work in arithmetic and geometry.
7. According to the article, al-Kindi was a polymath in many fields. Write down these fields.  
 Al-Kindi was a physician, philosopher, mathematician, chemist, musician and astronomer.

### SB: p.32

Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
recycle	Reuse	يعيد تكرار

## Masdar City – a positive step? 2016\2015 وازارى

<p>Megaprojects are extremely large investment projects, which are designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to cities. Although megaprojects vary in terms of size and cost, they are all, by definition, expensive, public projects that attract a high level of interest and media coverage. Projects range from motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges, etc. to entire city complexes.</p>	<p>هذه المشاريع العملاقة هي استثمارات كبيرة جداً والتي تم تصميمها لتشجيع النمو الاقتصادي وجلب فوائد جديدة للمدن. وبالرغم ان هذه المشاريع العملاقة تختلف من حيث الحجم والتكلفة، لكنها كلها مشاريع عامة مكلفة تجلب الاهتمام والتغطية الاعلامية. تتراوح المشاريع من طرق ومطارات و محطات وأنفاق و جسور، الخ. إلى مجمعات سكنية على مستوى المدينة.</p>
<p>The concept of a megaproject is always based on the benefits it brings to a community. However, many megaprojects have been criticised because of <b>their</b> negative effects on a community or the environment. This essay will look at these issues with regard to Masdar City, a megaproject in Abu Dhabi.</p>	<p>يعتمد مبدأ المشاريع العملاقة على المنافع التي سيجلبها لمجتمع ما. ولكن الكثير منها تم انتقاده بسبب تأثيراتها السلبية على المجتمع او على البيئة. ستمعن هذه المقالة النظر في هذه الامور من حيث تناولها مدينة مصدر-مدينة في ابو ظبي.</p>
<p>Masdar City, which began its development in 2006 CE, will be the world's first carbon-neutral, zero waste artificially-created city. Covering an area of six square kilometres, when it is completed in 2025 CE, it is expected to house more than 40,000 residents, 50,000 commuters, and 1,500 businesses involved in mainly environmentally-friendly products.</p>	<p>ستكون مدينة مصدر والتي بدأ تطويرها عام 2006 اول مدينة تم صنعها لتكون خالية من الكربون ومنعدمة النفايات. مغطيه ما مساحته ست كيلو مترات مربعة وعندما يتم إكمالها في عام 2025 ، من المتوقع ان تحوي اكثر من 40.000 ساكن و 50.000 عابر و 1500 شركة تعمل في منتجات صديقة للبيئة.</p>
<p>The city will run entirely on renewable energy sources. It is built on an advanced energy grid which monitors exactly how much electricity is being used by every outlet in the complex. Furthermore, in order to reduce its carbon footprint, Masdar City will be a car-free zone, designed to be pedestrian and cycle-friendly. Electric, driverless cars will operate as public transport vehicles, and the city will be connected to other locations by a network of roads and railways.</p>	<p>ستعمل المدينة بشكل كامل على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة. فهي مبنية على شبكة طاقة متقدمة والتي تراقب كمية الطاقة المستخدمة بالضبط من قبل كل قابس في المجمع السكني. وللتقليل من الانبعاث الكربوني، ستكون مدينة مصدر خالية من السيارات مصممة للمشاة وتشجع ركوب الدراجات. ستعمل المركبات الكهربائية التي تعمل بدون سائق كمركبات للنقل العام وستكون المدينة متصلة بمواقع اخرى عن طريق سلاسة من الطرق والسكك الحديدية.</p>
<p>Energy will be provided by solar power and wind farms, and there are also plans to build the world's largest hydrogen plant. A desalination plant will be used to provide the city's water, with 80% of water used being recycled. Biological waste will be used as an energy source too, and industrial waste will be recycled.</p>	<p>سيتم التزود بالطاقة بواسطة الطاقة الشمسية ومزارع المراوح الهوائية، وهناك ايضا خطط لبناء أكبر مصنع للهيدروجين في العالم. سيتم تزويد المدينة بالماء عن طريق محطة لتحلية المياه، وسيتم تدوير % 80 من هذه المياه. سيتم استخدام النفايات الحيوية (البيولوجية) كمصدر للطاقة ايضا. وسيتم تدوير النفايات الصناعية.</p>
<p>The current residents of Masdar City are all students at the Masdar Institute of Science and Technology, a university whose students are fully committed to finding solutions to the world's energy problems.</p>	<p>ساكن مدينة مصدر الحاليون هم كلهم طلاب في مؤسسة مصدر للعلوم والتكنولوجيا، جامعة طلابها ملتزمون تماما بإيجاد حلول لمشاكل العالم المتعلقة بالطاقة.</p>
<p>While the project has the support of many global, environmental and conservation organisations, there is some criticism of it. It is felt that, instead of building an artificial sustainable city, sustainability should be made a priority of existing cities.</p>	<p>يحظى المشروع بدعم العديد من المنظمات العالمية البيئية منها والمحافظة، لكن هناك بعض الإنتقادات له. يشعر الناس انه وبدلا من القيام بإنشاء مدينة صناعية مستدامة، يجب ان تكون الإستدامة اولوية للمدن الموجودة.</p>
<p>In conclusion, the benefits of Masdar City for the community and the environment greatly <b>outweigh</b> any disadvantages. If the aims of the developers are realised, Masdar City will be a blueprint for future urban planning that will inspire similar megaprojects in other countries.</p>	<p>وفي الختام، تغلب المنفعة الخاصة بمدينة مصدر للمجتمع والبيئة اي مساوي. إذا تم ادراك وتحقيق اهداف المطورين لهذه المدينة، ستكون بمثابة مخطط للتخطيط الحضري المستقبلي وستلهم مشاريع ضخمة اخرى في دول اخرى.</p>

# QUESTIONS

1. What are megaprojects and why do they exist? What are –in your opinion- the advantages and disadvantages of such projects to people and the environment?
- 2- According to the text, especially the first paragraph, why are megaprojects designed? .....
- 3- Why are many megaprojects criticised?
- 4- How will Masdar city reduce its carbon footprint?
- 5- What does the underlined/bolded phrase “Biological waste” mean?
- 6- What will happen if the aims of the developers are realized?
- 7- Critical Thinking: What do you think is the aim of building such cities? Suggest three specific benefits of such cities.
- 8- What do “hydrogen plants” do?
- 9- Do you wish to live in Masdar City? Why? Why not?
- 10- What is the size of this project and how many people will it house?
- 11- What examples of megaprojects are provided in the essay?
- 12- What are the advantages of the creation of Masdar City? What are the disadvantages?
- 13- Do you think that Masdar City is a beneficial project or not? Give your reasons.
- 14- Do you think that a similar project to Masdar City would be successful in Jordan? What advantages and disadvantages can you think of?

\*\*\*\*\*

1. What examples of megaprojects are provided in the essay? motorways, airports, stations, tunnels, bridges, etc. to entire city complexes.
2. What are the advantages of the creation of Masdar city? What are the disadvantages?  
The advantages include the fact that it will be the world’s first carbon-neutral, zero-waste city. Although there will be excellent public transport. The disadvantage is that many people think the money should have been spent on cleaning up existing places and making them more sustainable.
3. Do you think that Masdar City is a beneficial project or not? Give your reasons.  
Yes, I think that Masdar city is designed to encourage economic growth and bring new benefits to community.
4. What are the advantages and disadvantages of megaprojects to people and the environment?  
The advantages include installing the latest technology that helps cities to become environmentally friendly. However, disadvantages are that they are all brand new and some people think it would be better to spend the money on regenerating old towns.
5. According to the essay, megaprojects are extremely large investment projects, which are designed for two purposes. Write these two purposes down.  
A. Megaprojects are designed to encourage economic growth.                      B. Bring new benefits to community.
6. According to the essay, what is the concept of a megaproject? The concept of a megaproject is always based on the benefits it brings to a community.
7. According to the essay, many megaprojects have been criticised for many reasons. Mention them.  
Because of their negative effects on a community or the environment.
8. According to the essay, there are many things that will make Masdar city environmentally-friendly city.  
A. it will be the world’s first carbon-neutral.                      B. it will be the world’s first zero-waste artificially-created city.  
C. it will run entirely on renewable energy sources.                      D. it will be a car-free zone.      E. biological waste will be used as an energy source.
9. According to the essay, Masdar city will rely on some of the renewable sources of energy. Write down them.      Solar energy and wind farms.
10. Quote the sentence which indicates that Masdar City is supported by global institutions.  
While the project has the support of many global, environmental and conservation organisations.
11. Find a word in the text which means “The process of removing salt from sea water”.      Desalination
12. Although the project of Masdar city has the support of many global organisations, there is some criticism of it. Give the reason. It is felt that, instead of building an artificial sustainable city, sustainability should be made a priority of existing cities.

**AB: p.22**

Words	Meanings (E)	Meanings (A)
irrigate	to supply land with water	يروي الارض
fertile land	produce more than enough food	ارض خصبة
hand on	Filed working,working by hand	عمل يدوي
legacy	What someone leaves to the world after their death	تركة

**A founding father of farming**

<p>Ibn Bassal was a writer, a scientist and an engineer who lived in Al-Andalus in the eleventh century CE. He worked in the court of Al-Ma'mun, (1) who was the king of Toledo. His great passions were botany, (2) which is the study of plants, and agriculture. Although he was a great scholar, he was also a practical man and all of his writing came from his own 'hands-on' experience of working the land.</p>	<p>كان ابن البصال كاتباً عالم ا ومهندسا عاش في الأندلس في القرن الحدي عشر للميلاد. لقد عمل في بلاط المأمون والذي كان ملك توليدو. كان كل شغفه دراسة علم النبات والزراعة. بالرغم من كونه عالما عظيما فقد كان رجلاً عمليا وقد اتت كل كتاباته من خبرته العملية في العمل في الارض.</p>
<p>One of the many things which Ibn Bassal achieved was A Book of Agriculture. The book consisted of sixteen chapters which explain how best to grow trees, fruit and vegetables, as well as herbs and sweet-smelling flowers; perhaps the most famous chapter of all was the one (3) that described how to treat different types of soil. Ibn Bassal also worked out how to irrigate the land by finding underground water and digging wells. He designed water pumps and irrigation systems. All of these things were passed on through his writing.</p>	<p>كان كتاب الزراعة احد الأشياء التي حققها ابن البصال. يتكون الكتاب من ست عشرة فصل والتي تشرح كيفية زراعة الأشجار والفواكه والخضروات والاعشاب والازهار ذات الرائحة الجميلة بالطريقة الفضلى. ربما كان الفصل الافضل هو الفصل الذي يشرح كيفية التعامل مع الانواع المختلفة من الاتربة. وقد بحث ابن البصال كيفية ري الارض عن طريق ايجاد المياه الجوفية وحفر الآبار. لقد صمم مضخات للمياه وانظمة ري. لقد مرر هذه الاشياء الينا عن طريق كتاباته.</p>
<p>The influence of Ibn Bassal's book was enormous. As farmers down the generations followed his instructions and advice, the land became wonderfully fertile and produced more than enough food for the fast-growing population. The irrigation systems (4) that he and his followers put in place are still in evidence in Spain. Although his name is not widely known, Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world has been great.</p>	<p>كان تأثير كتاب ابن البصال عظيما. كما قد تبع المزارعون وغير تواتر الاجيال تعليماته ونصائحه، فقد اصبحت الأرض خصبة بشكل مذهل وانتجت غذاء اكثر من اللازم لعدد السكان الآخذ بالتزايد. أنظمة الري التي نفذها وأصدقائه لا تزال حاضرة في اسبانيا. لقد كان ارث ابن البصال للعالم عظيما بالرغم من ان اسمه ليس بمعروف بشكل واسع.</p>

# QUESTIONS

1. Name two of Ibn Bassal's achievements.
- 2- Find a verb in the second paragraph that means 'supply land with water'.
- 3- Guess the meaning of 'fertile land' in the third paragraph. Which part of the text illustrates its meaning?
- 4- Guess the meaning of 'legacy' in the third paragraph. What does the author suggest is Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world?
- 5- Which paragraph suggests that Ibn Bassal was a polymath? Give examples of his areas of knowledge.
- 6- Why do you think the area around Toledo had a 'fast-growing population'?
- 7- What does the book explain?
- 8- What did Ibn Bassal design and how was that helpful?
- 9- Quote the sentences which indicate that people overtime had followed Ibn Bassal's inventions.

\*\*\*\*\*

1. Name two of Ibn Bassal's achievements.  
Writing A Book of Agriculture;  
Designing water pumps and irrigation systems.
2. Find a verb in the second paragraph that means „supply land with water“.  
Irrigate.
3. Guess the meaning of „fertile land“ in the third paragraph. Which part of the text illustrates its meaning?  
Agriculturally productive; produced more than enough food
4. Guess the meaning of „legacy“ in the third paragraph. What does the author suggest is Ibn Bassal's legacy to the world?  
'Legacy' means what someone leaves to the world after their death. Ibn Bassal's legacy is his agricultural instructions and advice.
5. Which paragraph suggests that Ibn Bassal was a polymath? Give examples of his areas of knowledge.  
The first paragraph: writing, science, engineering, botany, agriculture.
6. Why do you think the area around Toledo had a „fast-growing population“?  
Because the area was producing a lot of food as a result of Ibn Bassal's irrigation systems.
7. According to the article. Where did Ibn Bassal get his knowledge?  
From his own 'hand-on' experience of working the land.
8. What does the most famous chapter in 'book of agriculture' illustrate?  
That described how to treat different types of soil.
9. According to the article, Ibn Bassal worked out how to irrigate the land, How did he do that? And what did he design?  
By finding underground water and digging wells. He designed water pumps and irrigation systems.

**SB: p.33 Ex.4+5**

2. Urban planning 2.Public transport 3.Biological waste 4.Carbon footprint 5.Negative effect 6.Economic growth.

**SB: p.33 Ex. 5**

Complete the sentences with the correct collections.

1. When people talk about \_\_\_\_\_, they can mean either an improvement in the average standard of living, or an increase in the value of a country's products.
2. Pollution has some serious \_\_\_\_\_ on the environment, such as the death of wildlife and plant life.
3. We can all work hard to reduce our \_\_\_\_\_ by living a more environmentally-friendly lifestyle.
4. If we take \_\_\_\_\_ more often, there will be fewer cars on the roads, which will result in cleaner air in our cities.
5. Hospitals need to dispose of a lot of \_\_\_\_\_, and it should be carefully managed because it can be dangerous.
6. The need for more effective \_\_\_\_\_ is evident when we consider modern day problems like traffic.

Answers:1. economic growth 2. negative effects 3. carbon footprint 4. public transport 5. biological waste 6. urban planning

**AB: p.20 Ex. 1**

**Philosopher-arithmetic-polymath-chemist-geometry-mathematician-physician**

1. My father teaches Maths.He's a .....
2. You must not take in medicine without consulting .....
3. We learn about shapes, lines, and angles when we study .....
4. Mr Shahin is a true ....., working in all kinds of creative and scientific fields.
5. Ramzi is very good with numbers and calculations.He always scores high in .....
6. A..... is someone who thinks and writes about meaning of life.

Answers:1. mathematician 2. physician 3. geometry 4. polymath 5. Arithmetic 6. Philosopher

**AB: p.20 Ex. 2**

**1.talent 2.founder 3.scales 4.polymath 5.arithmetic 6.laboratory**

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a. an expert in many subjects.        | b. a room for scientific experiments. |
| c. a person who starts something new. | d. an instrument to measure weight    |
| e. an engineer.                       | f. the study of numbers.              |
| g. special ability.                   |                                       |

Answers: 1. g 2. c 3. d 4. a 5.f 6.b



# Cleft Sentences

- A Cleft Sentence (divided) is a complex sentence (one with a main clause and a dependent clause).
- We can usually express the meaning of a cleft sentence with a simple sentence. It is called ‘cleft’ sentence because there are **two parts to the sentence**.
- **Uses (Functions): We use cleft sentences in order to emphasise certain pieces of information.**
- We can start cleft sentences with the following phrases, among others:

**1. The person who .....**

Huda won the prize for art last year.

The person **who** won the prize for the art last year **was** Huda.

**2. The time (day) when.....**

Huda won the prize for art **last year**.

**The time when** Huda won the prize **was** last year.

**3. The place where.....**

The Olympic Games were held in **London** in 2012 CE.

**The place where** The Olympic Games were held **was** London.

**5. The way in which.....**

You can **stop watching TV** to study hard.

**The way in which** you can study hard **is** to stop watching TV.

**6. What .....**

I enjoyed **learning English**.

**What** I enjoyed **was learning English**.

I don't like **the way she did it**.

**What** I don't like is **the way she did it**.

**The head teacher was the person who took our class to the museum last month.**

1. The person .....

2. The place .....

3. The time .....

The person who took our class to the museum last month was the head teacher.

The place where the head teacher took us last month was the museum.

The time when the head teacher took us to the museum was last month.

**It + be (is, was) + the emphasised part of the sentence + who / that ...**

**It was** the head teacher **who / that** took us to the museum last month.

**It was** to the museum **where** the head teacher took us last month.

**It was** last month **when** the head teacher took us to the museum.

- 1. **Ali** played football last month. ....
  - 2. Ali played **football** last month. ....
  - 3. Ali played football **last month**. ....
1. It was Ali who played football last month.    2. It was football that Ali played last month.    3. it was last month when Ali played football.

**SB: p.29    Ex.7**

**Write this sentence in three different ways, emphasizing the parts underlined in each case.**

**Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.**

**Answers:**

- 1. The person who invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century was Al-Jazari.  
It was Al-Jazari who/that invented the mechanical clock in the twelfth century.
- 2. The thing that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century was the mechanical clock.  
It was the mechanical clock that Al-Jazari invented in the twelfth century.
- 3. The period/ time when Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock was the twelfth century.  
It was in the twelfth century that Al-Jazari invented the mechanical clock.

**SB: p.29    Ex.8**

**Rewrite these sentences, emphasizing the part in bold and using the structure as shown.**

- 1. **Al-Kindi** contributed to the invention of the oud.  
The person who \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. Jabir Ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory **in Iraq**.  
The country where \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. **Ali Ibn Nafi'** established the first music school in the world.  
It was \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. **Jabir Ibn Hayyan** also invented ink that can be read in the dark.  
It was \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. Al-Kindi is especially famous for **his work in geometry**.  
It is \_\_\_\_\_

**Answers:**

- 1. contributed to the invention of the oud was Al-Kindi.
- 2. Jabir Ibn Hayyan did his research in a laboratory was Iraq.
- 3. Ali Ibn Nafi' who established the first music school in the world.
- 4. Jabir Ibn Hayyan who/that also invented ink that can be read in the dark.
- 5. for his work in geometry that Al-Kindi is especially famous.

**AB: p.20 Ex.3**

**Make cleft sentences, stressing the information in bold.**

**Queen Rania** opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE.

It was \_\_\_\_\_

2. Petra was made a World Heritage Site in **1985 CE**.

The year \_\_\_\_\_

3. It stopped working at **11 p.m.**

It was \_\_\_\_\_

4. **My father** has influenced me most.

The person \_\_\_\_\_

5. I like **Geography** most of all.

The subject \_\_\_\_\_

6. **The heat** made the journey unpleasant.

It was \_\_\_\_\_

**Answers:**

1. Queen Rania who opened the Children's Museum of Jordan in 2007 CE.

3. 11 p.m. when I stopped working.

5. that /which I like most of all is Geography.

2. when Petra was made a World Heritage Site was 1985 CE.

4. who/that has influenced me most is my father.

6. the heat that/which made the journey unpleasant.

**AB: p.30 Ex.6**

**Write one sentence that means the same.**

1. The Egyptians built the pyramids.

It was the \_\_\_\_\_

2. Ali attends to finish his project tonight.

Ali is \_\_\_\_\_

3. London is a huge city. It's the capital of the UK.

London \_\_\_\_\_

**Answers:**

1. It was the Egyptians that/who built the pyramids.

2. Ali is planning to finish his project tonight.

3. London, which is the capital of the UK, is a huge city.

## Relative clauses

**1. Defining relative clauses:** are used to identify which particular person, place or thing is being talked about. The defining relative clause is usually connected to the main clause by a relative pronoun such as who, which, that, where or when.

1. We use **who/that** to refer to **people**.

N      V

The **man who** is standing there is a famous writer.

2. We use **which/that** to refer to **things and animals**.

I bought a new **car that** is very fast.

3. We use **where** to refer to **places**.

S+V

That's the **restaurant where** we met for the first time.

4. We use **when** to refer to **times**.

I remember the **day when** we first met.

5. **Whose** is the possessive form of **who**.

N      N

He's the man **whose** daughter I met in Jordan.

-He goes to the city **where** he lives.

-He goes to the city **which** is very big.

**Exercise 1: Circle the correct answer:**

1. The man ..... horse is white won the race.    a.who                      b.whose                      c.that
2. The girl ..... won the prize is Amal.            a.who                      b.whose                      c.when
3. The car ..... was rented was good.            a.who                      b.when                      c.which
4. The school ..... I studied was Marka Prep. B/S No.1.    a.who    b.where                      c.which
5. April is the month ..... the war broke out.    a.when                      b.whose                      c.where

**Exercise 2: Join the sentences using the relative pronouns in brackets:**

1. The book was good. I read it. (which) . . . . .
2. I liked the people. I met them at the school last night. (who) . . . . .
3. The man called the police. His wallet was stolen. (whose) . . . . .
4. The town is small. I grew up. (where) . . . . .

**2. Non-defining relative clauses:** are used to **give more detail** about a particular person, place or thing that is being talked about.

The non-defining relative clause is usually connected to the main clause by a relative pronoun such as who, which, where or when.

The Sahara desert is very hot. It is in Africa.

The Sahara desert, which is in Africa, is very hot.

**SB: p.31 Ex.5**

Complete the text with the correct word from the box. Sometimes, more than one answer is possible.

That / which / where / who

Qasr Bashir is an extremely well-preserved Roman castle (1) \_\_\_\_\_ is situated in the Jordanian desert, and is about eighty kilometers south of Amman.

The walls and huge corner towers of the castle, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ was built at the beginning of the fourth century CE, are still standing.

It is thought that Qasr Bashir was built to protect the Roman border. Apart from the rooms in the castle, there are also about twenty-three stables (3) \_\_\_\_\_ horses may have been kept.

People (4) \_\_\_\_\_ love exploring historical Roman ruins will certainly find a visit to Qasr Bashir very rewarding. Once inside the building, one can imagine very vividly what it would have been like to live there during the times of the Roman Empire.

**Answers:**

1. which/that
2. which
3. where
4. who/that

**SB: p.31 Ex.8**

**Pronunciation: minimal pairs (1)**

- |                                            |                       |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| The words which contain the p sound /p/    | pen / pack / rope     |
| The words which contain the b sound /b/    | bend / back / robe    |
| The words which contain the n sound /n/    | sun / India / win     |
| The words which contain the ing sound /ɪŋ/ | song / singing / wing |
| The words which contain the i sound /ɪ/    | fit / give / middle   |

The words which contain the ee sound /i:/	been / dream / medium
The words which contain the a sound /æ/	and / back / ran
The words which contain the ar sound /ɑ:/	bath / car / half
The words which contain the e sound /e/	best / egg / deaf
The words which contain the ir sound /ɜ:/	birthday / world / girl

**AB: p.21 Ex. 4**

**Match the beginning with the correct endings and join them a relative pronoun.**

- |                                             |                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. A mathematician is someone ...           | 2. Geometry and arithmetic are subjects ... |
| 3. 'Physician' is an old-fashioned word ... | 4. A chemist is a person ...                |
| 5. The stars and planets are things ...     |                                             |

- |                                   |                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| A. are studied by mathematicians. | b. means 'doctor'     |
| c. works with numbers.            | d. astronomers study. |
| e. works in a laboratory.         |                       |

**Answers:**

- 1 c: A mathematician is someone who works with numbers.  
 2 a: Geometry and arithmetic are subjects that/which are studied by mathematicians.  
 3 b: 'Physician' is an old-fashioned word that/which means 'doctor'.  
 4 e: A chemist is a person who/that works in a laboratory.  
 5 d: The stars and planets are things that/which astronomers study.

**AB: p.21 Ex. 5**

**Complete the text about Ibn Sina, using the relative pronouns in the box one pronoun is used twice. Add commas for the non- defining relative clauses.**

**That / when / which / who**

Ibn Sina (1) \_\_\_\_\_ is also known as Avicenna was a polymath. Ibn Sina was influenced as a young man by the works of the philosopher Aristotle. He wrote on early Islamic philosophy (2) \_\_\_\_\_ included many subjects, especially logic and ethics. He also wrote ALQanun fi-Tibb, the book (3) \_\_\_\_\_ became the most famous medical textbook ever. In the last ten or twelve years of his life, Ibn Sina started studying literary matters. His friends (4) \_\_\_\_\_ were worried about his health advised him to relax. He refused and told them 'I prefer a short life with width to a narrow one with length.' It was the month of Ramadan (5) \_\_\_\_\_ Ibn Sina died, in June 1037 CE.

**Answers:**

- |                                    |                                        |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. ,who is also known as Avicenna, | 2. ,which included many subjects,      |
| 3. that                            | 4. ,who were worried about his health, |
| 5. when                            |                                        |

**Endings (suffixes)**

1. Noun Suffixes: (tion, sion, ment, ity, ance, ence, ness, ist, er, ess, ture, cy, age, ship, or, dom)
2. Adjective Suffixes: (ible, al, ive, ful, ic, ous, ant, ent, ary, ory, less, able, ed, full)
3. Verb Suffixes : (fy, ise, ize, ate, en, ide)
4. Adverb: ly.

\*\*\*\*\*

**a. The Noun:****Rule: S+V+O**

1. يستخدم كفاعل في الجملة او مفعول به:

**Education** is a necessity for everyone.

Patients **need medicine** to recover.

2. دختسيم بعد حروف ارجل ( from, of, in, on, with, without, at, (to), into, for ):

There is a particular Bedouin style of **weaving**.

Many instruments that are still today in **operations** were designed by Arab scholars.

3. دختسيم بعد الفصلة:

Do you think the wheel was the most important **invention** ever?

Al-Kindi made many important mathematical **discoveries**.

4. دختسيم بعد اداة الفيرعتل ( the ) ، او اداتي اريكنتل ( a / an ):

The Middle East is famous for **the production of** olive oil.

My father bought our house with **an inheritance from** his grandfather.

5. دختسيم ارنامض بعد لك لذك مسلا اتيكلمل ( my, his, her, your, its, their, our, ('s / s') ):

I will be going to university to continue my **education**.

Have you seen Nasser's **collection** of postcards? He's got hundreds!

6. يستخدم بعد الكلمات:

(several, many, much, any, few, little, some, no, enough, another, other, one,  
:(all, every, each,

We don't have any **translation** for this text.

Ali has no **appreciation** for his achievements.

7. بعد اسماء الاشارة

**this / that / these / those**

This **production** is sold in many markets.

## b. The Adjective:

1. تاتي ال بقية فصل الاسم:

Ibn Sina wrote **medical** textbooks.

Fatima al-Fihri was born in the **ninth** century.

Petra is one of the most important archaeological sites in Jordan.

2. دختستم ادعب اة فصل المفعول الآتية:

**sound, seem, look, appear, become, get, taste, smell, feel, find (found), verb to be)**

Bedouin style of weaving is very **attractive**.

Mary looked **attractive** in her new dress.

3. دختستم ادعب اة فصل ارظلف (ly):

It's an extremely **hot** day.

**as-----as /more-----than / the most + adjective + noun.4**

Who was the most **influential** writer of the twentieth century?

Ali is more **creative** than his friend.

The new plan is as **original** as the plan we followed.

## c. The Verb:

1. بعد To

In our exam, we had to **translate** a text from Arabic into English.

2. بعد الافعال المساعدة ما عدا افعال To be

They will **install** a new air conditioning unit in our flat tomorrow.



I don't **expect** to get a job.

Some people **expect** things will improve.  
Thank you for help, I really **appreciate** it.

**Study** hard for your exams!

#### 4. The Adverb:

**Traditionally**, the whole process is done by hand, from the washing of the wool to the finished article.

He is **highly** intelligent.

Sami **carefully** drove to Aqaba last week.

He drew **creatively** all these paintings.

They did it **successfully**.  
The doctor declared her fit **medically**.

Their house is **attractively** decorated.

They have **attractively** decorated our house.

They can **attractively** decorate our flat.

3. وقت لام اللمجد إدعب لعفب لا الفاعل:

4. دختسيم العفب ارجملد لعفك أدب في رمالية الجملة:

1. دختسيم ارظلف ( المحلل ) دب في فاية ارشابه اللمجلة ويتبع بفاصلة ( , ):

2. لبق الصفة:.

3. دختسيم المحلل لبق العفب اي في سينرل ارشابه اللمجلة:

4. دعب العفب اللزم رشابه:

5. دعب او عفملل هب اذا اكن المي دعتم لعفب ( نهاية الجملة ):

6. بين اجزاء الفعل:

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
Produce ينتج	production, product, producer	productive , produced	Productively
.....	Medicine	medical	Medically
.....	Nine	ninth	Ninthly
Inherit يرث	inheritance , inheritor	inheritable	inheritably
originate	origin , originality	original	originally
invent	invention , inventor	inventive	inventively
Discover	discovery , discoverer	مكتشف: discovered , قابل اكتشاف: لاكتشاف	.....
Influence يوثر	influence	influential, influenced	influentially
Weave يحيك	weaver , weaving	weaved	.....
attract	Attraction	attractive	attractively
create	creation , creature, creativity	creative	creatively
translate	translation , translator	translated	.....
Appreciate يقدر	Appreciation	appreciative	appreciatively
.....	archaeology, archaeologist	archaeological	archaeologically
educate	education , educator	educational	educationally
Collect	collection , collector	collective	collectively
install	installation , installer	installed	.....
operate	Operation	operational	operationally
expect	expectancy , expectation	expectant	expectantly
تقليدي	tradition , traditionalist	traditional	traditionally
Contemporize يحدث	Contemporisation	contemporary	contemporarily
ثقافة	Culture	cultural	culturally
.....	major , majority	major	.....
Visualize يبصر	Vision	visual	visually
مستمر	.....	ongoing	.....
Discover	discovery, discoverer	.....	.....
Prescribe بوصف	Prescription	prescriptive	.....

Infect يصاب	Infection	Infectious	infectiously
Diagnose يشخص	Diagnosis	Diagnostic	.....
Intend	Intention	intentional	intentionally
.....	surgeon , surgery	surgical	surgically
Believe	Belief	believable	.....
Succeed	Success	successful	Successfully
Conclude	Conclusion	concluding	.....

(adjective+noun+verb+adverb+adjective+noun)

**AB: p.21 Ex. 7**

Complete the sentences with words formed from the words in brackets.

1. The Middle East is famous for the \_\_\_\_\_ of olive oil. (produce)
2. Ibn Sina wrote \_\_\_\_\_ textbooks. (medicine)
3. Fatima al-Fihri was born in the \_\_\_\_\_ century. (nine)
4. My father bought our house with an \_\_\_\_\_ from his grandfather. (inherit)
5. Scholars have discovered an \_\_\_\_\_ document from the twelfth century. (origin)
6. Do you think the wheel was the most important \_\_\_\_\_ ever? (invent)
7. Al-Kindi made many important mathematical \_\_\_\_\_ (discover)
8. Who was the most \_\_\_\_\_ writer of the twentieth century? (influence)

**Answers:**

1. production 2. medical 3. ninth 4. inheritance 5. original 6. invention 7. discoveries 8. Influential

**AB: p. 25 Ex. 9**

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Petra is an important \_\_\_\_\_ site. (archaeology)
2. I will be going to university to continue my \_\_\_\_\_. (educate)
3. In our exam, we had to \_\_\_\_\_ a text from Arabic into English. (translation)
4. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ a new air conditioning unit in our flat. (installation)
5. Thank you for your help, I really \_\_\_\_\_ it. (appreciation)
6. Have you seen Nasser's \_\_\_\_\_ of postcards? He's got hundreds! (collect)

**Answers:** 1. archaeological 2. education 3. translate 4. install 5. appreciate 6. collection

**SB: p. 39 Ex. 7**

Complete the text with suitable words derived from the words in brackets.

Madaba is the place where most Jordanian weavers buy their raw materials. Sheep's wool, and goat and camel hair are used by Bedouin tribes and villagers all over Jordan to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (product) rugs, bags and other beautiful items. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (traditional), the whole process is done by hand, from the washing of the wool to the finish article. There is a particular Bedouin style of (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (weave) that buyers find very (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (attraction). Another craft practiced in Madaba is the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (creative) of ceramic items.

Answers: 1. produce 2. Traditionally 3. weaving 4. attractive 5. creation

### AB: p. 24 Ex. 3

Complete the sentences with the correct adjective. One adjective is not needed. The first one is done for you. على المعنى فقط

Contemporary, cultural, educational, major, ongoing, visual

1. We went to the concert yesterday. The music was written by a new young composer, it was .....
2. When we go to on school trips, we always learn new things because the trips are.....
3. King Hussein was a..... world figure in the twentieth century.
4. Photography and painting are two examples of the ..... arts.
5. Art, music and literature are all part of our ..... life.

Answers: 1. contemporary 2. educational 3. major 4. visual 5. cultural

### SB: p. 42 Ex. 4

Choose the most suitable item from the words given in the box to complete the sentences.

1. Many instruments that are still today in ----- were designed by Arab scholars. (operational / operate / operations)
2. When do you ----- to receive your test results? (expect / expectedly / expectancy)

Complete the following sentences with the suitable words derived from the words in the box: نمط جديد

educate, install, archaeology

1. Petra is an important \_\_\_\_\_ site.
2. I will be going to university to continue my \_\_\_\_\_.

translation, installation, Influence

3. In our exam, we had to \_\_\_\_\_ a text from Arabic into English.
4. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ a new air conditioning unit in our flat.

collect, appreciation, Weave

5. Thank you for your help, I really \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. Have you seen Nasser's \_\_\_\_\_ of postcards? He's got hundreds!

Answers: 1. archaeological 2. education 3. translate 4. install 5. appreciate 6. collection

Writing: Summarizing S.B.p.33 A.B.p.23